

汉英对照阅读系列
Chinese-English Readers series

Tales 上下五千年(三)
from Five Thousand Years
of Chinese
History (III)



Better Link Press

目
录

| | |
|--------------------|----|
| 致读者 | 8 |
| 关于《上下五千年(三)》 | 10 |
| 1. 袁绍杀宦官 | 12 |
| 2. 曹操起兵 | 20 |
| 3. 王允计除董卓 | 30 |
| 4. 曹操煮酒论英雄 | 36 |
| 5. 官渡大战 | 46 |
| 6. 孙策占据江东 | 58 |
| 7. 刘备三顾茅庐 | 66 |
| 8. 周瑜火攻赤壁 | 76 |

2013/10
729

Alisher Navoiy
nomidagi
O'zbekiston MK

Ko'mitachi fond
PVI
2364813

| | |
|---|----|
| To the Reader..... | 9 |
| About the Book..... | 11 |
| | |
| 1. Yuan Shao Kills the Eunuchs..... | 13 |
| 2. Cao Cao Launches Military Action..... | 21 |
| 3. Wang Yun Snares Dong Zhuo..... | 31 |
| 4. Cao Cao Discusses Heroes over Wine..... | 37 |
| 5. The Battle of Guandu..... | 47 |
| 6. Sun Ce Takes Control of Jiangdong..... | 59 |
| 7. Liu Bei's Three Visits to the Thatched Hut..... | 67 |
| 8. Zhou Yu's Fiery Attack at Red Cliffs..... | 77 |

- 9、关羽水淹七军 90
- 10、吕蒙白衣渡江 100
- 11、陆逊火烧连营 110
- 12、七擒孟获 122
- 13、马谡失街亭 134
- 14、五丈原 144
- 15、司马懿装病 156
- 16、司马昭的野心 166
- 17、邓艾偷渡剑阁 172
- 18、阿斗乐不思蜀 182
- 19、石崇王恺比富 188
- 20、白痴皇帝 196

9. Guan Yu Swamps the Seven Armies.....91
10. Lü Meng Crosses the River in White.....101
11. Lu Xun Torches a 200-mile Chain
of Barracks.....111
12. Meng Huo's Seventh Capture.....123
13. Ma Su Loses Jieting.....135
14. Death of a Genius at Wuzhangyuan.....145
15. Sima Yi Feigns Illness.....157
16. The Ambitions of Sima Zhao.....167
17. Deng Ai Sneaks through Jian'ge.....173
18. Adou Revels in a Foreign Court and Forgets
his Home Country.....183
19. Shi Chong and Wang Kai in
a Wealth Contest.....189
20. Imbecile of an Emperor.....197

- 21、八王混战202
- 22、匈奴人称汉帝210
- 23、闻鸡起舞220
- 24、王马共天下226
- 25、石勒读汉书234
- 26、祖逖中流击楫242
- 27、王羲之写《兰亭集序》252
- 28、桓温北伐260
- 29、王猛扞虱谈天下268
- 30、一意孤行的苻坚276

21. War of Eight Princes.....203
22. A Xiongnu (Hun) Declares Himself Emperor
of Han.....211
23. Sword Practice at the First Crow
of the Rooster.....221
24. House of the Simas and the Wangs.....227
25. Shi Le Enjoys Han Books.....235
26. Zu Ti Knocks his Oar against the Gunwale
in Mid-crossing.....243
27. Wang Xizhi Writes his Famous "Preface to the Poems
Composed at the Orchid Pavilion".....253
28. Huan Wen on a Northern Expedition.....261
29. Wang Meng Discusses National Politics While
Picking Lice.....269
30. Strong-willed Fu Jian.....277

致读者

要学好一种语言，必须多听、多说、多读、多写。要学好汉语也不例外，必须多听普通话，多阅读汉语作品。

《文化中国·汉英对照阅读丛书》是一套开放的系列，收入其中的主要为当代中国作家的散文、故事、小说等。我们编辑这套汉英对照读物的目的是帮助你阅读欣赏原汁原味的当代中国文学或非文学作品，让你在学习现代汉语、提高汉语阅读水平的同时，了解中国社会、中国文化、中国历史，以及当代中国人民的生活。我们采用汉英对照的办法，是为了帮助你更好地欣赏这些作品，对照英语译文你可以知道自己是不是真正正确地理解了这些汉语原作的意义。

希望你能喜欢。

——编者

To the Reader

Acquisition of proficiency in a foreign language calls for diligent practices in listening, speaking, reading, and writing. Learning Chinese is no exception. To a student of Chinese, extensive reading exercises are as important as constant exposure to spoken Mandarin.

Cultural China: Chinese-English Readers series is an open-ended series of collections of writings in Chinese, mostly essays and short stories by contemporary Chinese writers. Our purpose in putting together this bilingual series is to help you enjoy contemporary Chinese literature and other writings in their authentic, unadulterated flavor and to understand the Chinese society, culture, history, and the contemporary life of the Chinese people as you learn the language and hone your reading skills. A bilingual text will assist you in better savoring these works and in checking your understanding of the Chinese original against the English translation.

We hope you will like this volume.

— the Editor

关于《上下五千年（三）》

《上下五千年》是一套中国历史故事读物，它按历史顺序编写，涉及的时间自远古至清代鸦片战争前。

这套书的选题计划出自教育家和语言学家林汉达（1900—1972）先生之手。林先生拟定了这套书的写作提纲，并写了部分篇目。林先生去世后，曹余章（1924—1996）先生续写完成了其余部分。两位先生薪尽火传写成的这部著作，以准确的史实、精心的编排、流畅的文笔、独特的风格赢得了读者的喜爱。

《上下五千年（三）》汉英对照本摘取自东汉末期至东晋末期这段历史时期的相关故事。考虑到对照本篇幅不宜太大，我们对原书的内容作了一些删节。

About the Book

Tales from Five Thousand Years of Chinese History is a collection of stories arranged in chronological order, covering a period from ancient times to the pre-Opium-War Qing Dynasty.

The topics were selected by educator and linguist, Lin Handa (1900-1972), who drew up the outline for the collection and contributed some chapters. Following Lin's death, Cao Yuzhang (1924-1996) took over his mantle and completed the work. This combined effort of two consecutive authors has enjoyed wide appeal by virtue of its historical accuracy, well-structured narrative, fluent writing and distinctive style.

The bilingual *Tales from Five Thousand Years of Chinese History (III)* covers a period of history from the last years of the Eastern Han Dynasty to the last years of the Eastern Jin Dynasty. For the sake of brevity, the original Chinese work has been slightly abridged in this bilingual edition.

1、袁绍杀宦官

公元189年，汉灵帝去世，年仅十四岁的皇子刘辩即位，这就是汉少帝。按照惯例，由何太后临朝，外戚大将军何进掌权。宦官蹇硕（音jiǎn shuò），原是警卫军头目，想谋杀何进，没有成功。何进掌权以后，把蹇硕抓起来杀了。

何进手下有个中军校尉袁绍，是个大士族的后代。他家祖上四代都做过三公（太尉、司徒、司空）一级的大官，许多朝廷和州郡的官员是袁家的门生或者部下，所以势力特别大。

蹇硕被杀以后，袁绍劝何进把宦官势力彻底除掉。他说：“以前蹇武想消灭宦官，由于泄漏了机密，反被宦官杀了。现在将军执掌兵权，应该替天下除害，可别错过了机会。”

何进不敢作主，去跟太后商量。何太后说什么也不答应。

1. Yuan Shao Kills the Eunuchs

In 189 AD, Emperor Ling of the Han dynasty died. He was succeeded by his 14-year-old son Liu Bian, who became Emperor Shao. In accordance with practice, Empress Dowager He acted as regent, with the reins of power entrusted to General-In-Chief He Jin, who was a maternal relative of the emperor. One of the newly empowered He Jin's first acts was to arrest and execute Jian Shuo, a eunuch who had been captain of the Palace Guard, who had recently attempted to assassinate him.

Under He Jin's command was a subcommander of the Middle Army by the name of Yuan Shao, who was descended from a family of mandarins. For four generations the family had provided officials of exalted rank, including Defenders-In-Chief, Ministers of Education or Ministers of Works (the so-called *san gong*, or Three Dukes), to the state. The fact that many officials of the imperial court had also been students or subordinates of members of this renowned family further added to its power and influence.

After the execution of Jian Shuo, Yuan Shao advised He Jin to eradicate the influence of the eunuchs once and for all, arguing "Dou Wu once tried to eliminate the eunuchs, but ended up instead being killed by them when news of the plan was leaked. Now that you have control of the army, you mustn't pass up this opportunity to remove them for good."

Afraid to take sole responsibility for such a decision, He

袁绍又替何进出谋划策，劝何进秘密召集各地的兵马进京，迫使太后同意除宦官。何进觉得这是个好办法，决定召各地兵马来吓唬太后。他想了想各州人马中，数并州（今山西大部、内蒙古、河北的一部分）牧（州的长官）董卓的兵力雄厚，找他帮忙错不了，就派人给董卓送了一封信，叫他迅速带兵进洛阳。

这个消息，很快就传到宦官的耳朵里。几个宦官商量说：“再不动手，咱们全完了。”他们就在皇宫里埋伏了几十个武士，假传太后的命令，召何进进宫。

何进一进宫，就被宦官围住杀了。

袁绍得知何进被杀的消息，立刻派他弟弟袁术攻打皇宫。袁术干脆放了一把火，把皇宫的大门烧了，大批的兵士冲进宫里，不分青红皂白，见了宦官就杀。有的人不是宦官，只是因为没胡须，也被错认为宦官杀了。

经过这场火并，外戚和宦官两败俱伤。何进召来的董卓却带兵进了洛阳。

Jin consulted the empress dowager on the matter. She adamantly rejected the idea.

Yuan Shao then suggested another approach. He urged He Jin to secretly order troops to converge on the capital with a view to forcing the empress dowager to go along with the plan to eliminate the eunuchs. He Jin agreed and began to muster troops stationed in various parts of the country. Of all the regions, Bingzhou (covering the bulk of today's Shanxi Province and parts of Inner Mongolia and Hebei) possessed in his estimation the strongest military force, which was under the command of governor Dong Zhuo. A messenger was dispatched with a letter for Dong Zhuo, instructing him to march on Luoyang without delay.

The eunuchs soon got wind of the plan. A number of them came to the same conclusion. "If we don't act now, it will be the end for us all." They set dozens of armed men in ambush inside the palace, then summoned He Jin for an audience with the empress dowager.

Once inside the palace, He Jin walked into the trap set by the eunuchs and was killed by the armed men waiting for him.

When news of He Jin's murder reached Yuan Shao, he immediately instructed his brother Yuan Shu to launch an assault on the imperial palace. Yuan Shu started a fire and burned down the palace gate before large numbers of his troops surged into the palace grounds and began attacking every eunuch in sight. A number of hapless unbearded officials were even mistaken for eunuchs and killed in the massacre. While this battle raged inside the palace, the Dong Zhuo's troops marched into Luoyang.

董卓本来是凉州（约当今甘肃、宁夏和青海、内蒙古一部）的豪强，在凉州结交了一批羌族豪强，称霸一方。黄巾起义以后，他又靠镇压起义军，升到并州牧的职位。他本来有侵占中原的野心。这次趁何进征召的机会，就急急忙忙带了三千人马来了。

董卓进了洛阳，就想掌握大权。可是人马太少，怕压不住洛阳的官兵。他就玩弄一个花招，在夜深人静的时候，把人马悄悄地开到城外去。到了第二天白天，再让这支人马大张旗鼓地开进来。这样一连几次进出，洛阳的人都闹不清董卓到底调来多少兵马。原来属何进手下的将士看到董卓势力大，也纷纷投靠董卓。这样一来，洛阳的兵权就全落到了董卓手里。

为了独揽大权，董卓决定废掉汉少帝，另立少帝的弟弟陈留王刘协。他知道洛阳城里的士族官员，数袁家的势力大，就请袁绍来商量这件事。

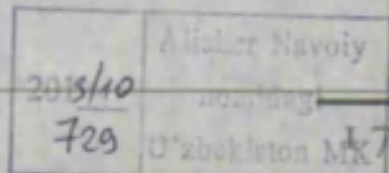
董卓说：“我看陈留王比现在的皇帝强，我打算立他为帝，您看怎么样？”

Dong Zhuo, originally from a powerful clan in Liangzhou (made up of today's Gansu, Ningxia, Qinghai and Inner Mongolia), became a force to reckon with by allying with powerful members of the Qiang ethnic minority. During the Yellow Turbans Uprising he rose to the position of governor of Bingzhou by helping to suppress the insurgencies. He had always had designs on China's central plains, and He Jin's invitation came none too soon. Dong Zhuo had quickly obliged with three thousand troops.

Once in Luoyang, Dong Zhuo was eager to take power. However, he was worried that his troops might not be strong enough to face down the government forces. So he employed a ruse: in the dead of night, he surreptitiously marched his troops out of the city, only for these same troops to march back into the capital in full fanfare the next day. After he had done this a few times, the residents of Luoyang were no longer sure of the size of Dong Zhuo's army. Some of He Jin's troops, impressed by the apparent strength of Dong Zhuo's military force, went over to his side. Dong Zhuo thus easily managed to seize control of the military.

In order to concentrate all power in his hands, Dong Zhuo formed a plan to depose Emperor Shao and install in his place his brother Liu Xie, Prince of Chenliu. Well aware that the Yuan family wielded an influence unmatched by the other mandarins in Luoyang, Dong Zhuo consulted Yuan Shao about the matter.

Dong Zhuo said, "In my view the Prince of Chenliu is more capable than the present emperor. I plan to install him as emperor. What do you think?"



袁紹回答说：“皇上年纪轻，刚刚即位，也没有听到有什么过失。您要废他，只怕天下的人不服。”

董卓碰了个钉子，气得瞪圆双眼，用手按着剑把，威胁着说：“大权在我手里，我要这样做，谁敢反对？难道你以为我董卓的刀不够快吗？”

袁紹也气红了脸，说：“天下的好汉难道只有你姓董的一个人！”一面说，一面拔出佩刀，走了出去。他怕董卓不会放过他，就匆忙奔往冀州（约当今河北中、南部，山东西北端和河南北端）去了。袁紹的弟弟袁術听到消息，也逃出洛阳，出奔南阳（在今河南）。

袁紹兄弟走了以后，董卓就召集文武百官，宣布废立的决定。刘协即了皇位，这就是汉献帝。董卓自己当了相国。

董卓原是极其残忍的家伙。他担任相国之后，纵容兵士残杀无辜的百姓。他的倒行逆施，造成洛阳城一片混乱。一些有见识的官员纷纷离开洛阳，其中包括洛阳的典军校尉曹操。

Yuan Shao replied, "The emperor is still young and has only recently ascended the throne. Besides, he is not known to have made any mistake. If you depose him, the country will probably not view it with favor."

Dong Zhuo was enraged by the snub—he put his hand on the handle of his sword and spoke threateningly, his eyeballs almost bursting from their sockets. "I have the power and I will do what I want. I dare anyone to oppose my will. Do you doubt the sharpness of my sword?"

Yuan Shao, his face red with anger, retorted, "Do you think you are the only hero in the world?" With that parting shot, he drew his sword and walked out. Fearing that Dong Zhuo would hunt him down, he fled to Jizhou (a combination of the central and southern parts of today's Hebei, the northwestern part of Shandong and the northern part of Henan). When his brother Yuan Shu heard of what had happened, he too fled Luoyang to seek safety in Nanyang (in today's Henan).

Following the departure of Yuan Shao and his brother, Dong Zhuo summoned select officials to hear his decision to depose the emperor. Liu Xie soon ascended the throne as Emperor Xian of the Han dynasty, while Dong Zhuo himself took the position of Counselor-in-chief.

Dong Zhuo was a cruel and ruthless man. On his watch as Counselor-in-chief he condoned the killing of innocent civilians by his soldiers. The barbarities and excesses committed under his rule wreaked havoc in Luoyang and prompted an exodus of officials, including a Commandant of the Control Army of Luoyang by the name of Cao Cao.

2、曹操起兵

曹操是沛国谯县（今安徽亳县，亳音 bó）人。他父亲曹嵩，是个宦官的养子。曹操从小聪明机灵，办事能干。当时有一个名士叫许劭（音 shào），善于品评人物。曹操年轻时候，去请他评论。许劭说：“你这个人呀，如果在太平时代，可能成为能臣，要是在乱世，你会成为奸雄。”

曹操二十岁那年，当上了洛阳北部尉（管理京城北部治安的官员）。他一上任，就叫工匠做了二十多根五色大棒，悬挂在衙门左右。他立下禁令，谁要是犯了禁，不管他是否豪门大族，都用大棒责打。

那时候，蹇硕有个叔父，是个出名的恶霸，依仗蹇硕的权势在洛阳横行不法，谁也不敢惹他。有一次，他在夜里带刀乱闹，触犯了曹操的禁令。曹操不管他来头多大，把他抓起

2. Cao Cao Launches Military Action

Cao Cao was from Qiao County, in the state of Pei. His father, Cao Song, was the foster son of a eunuch. There was at the time a famous writer named Xu Shao who was noted for his keen eye for judging character. The young Cao Cao once went to him for an evaluation. Xu Shao told him, "A character like you would make a capable minister in peace time, but troubled times may make a scheming scoundrel of you."

When a 20-year-old Cao Cao became Defender of Northern Luoyang, overseeing public security in the northern part of the capital, he immediately had twenty big, multi-colored wooden sticks made by workers to be hung on the left and right walls of his office. He then issued a list of prohibitions. Whoever violated the prohibitions would be punished with a beating with those sticks, even if the transgressor happened to come from a prominent family.

Jian Shuo's uncle was a notorious villain who terrorized Luoyang neighborhoods. No one dared to stand up to his lawless behavior because of his powerful nephew. One night he was seen creating havoc wielding a knife in a public place, thus breaking one of Cao Cao's prohibitions. Despite his powerful connections, he was arrested and given a thorough beating with one of the multi-colored sticks. The humiliation proved more than the local tyrant could take and he died on

来，用五色棒一阵痛打。那个恶霸经受不起，当场就死了。这件事轰动了整个洛阳。大家都称赞曹操不怕权势，执法严明。宦官对他又恨又怕，后来，把他调出洛阳，去当一名县令。

黄巾起义的时候，汉灵帝封曹操为骑都尉，派到颍川（治所在今河南禹县）一带镇压起义。他打败了波才领导的黄巾军。东汉王朝认为他作战有功，把他提升为济南相。过了几年，他才重新回到洛阳。

董卓进了洛阳，为了笼络人心，用高官厚禄收买一些官员。他听说曹操有点名气，就把曹操提升为骁骑校尉。但是曹操看出董卓倒行逆施，不得人心，迟早要垮台，不愿在董卓手下办事，他冒险逃出洛阳，到陈留（今河南陈留县）去找他父亲。

曹操的父亲在陈留有点财产。曹操回到陈留，得到父亲同意，花钱招兵买马，准备讨伐董卓。当地有个财主卫兹，也拿出很多钱和粮食来帮助曹操。不久，曹操的堂弟曹洪带着一千人来投奔曹操。曹操逐渐聚集了五千多人马。他一面操练兵马，一面派人探听各处动静。

the spot. This created a sensation that rippled across Luoyang, where the citizens praised Cao Cao's strict, impartial enforcement of the law even when the perpetrators had powerful connections. However, he inspired a mixture of loathing and fear in the eunuchs, who eventually transferred him out of Luoyang to become a county magistrate.

During the Yellow Turbans Rebellion, Emperor Ling made Cao Cao a Commandant of Calvary and sent him to the Yingchuan area (in today's Yu County in Henan) to quash the rebellion. Cao Cao soon defeated the Yellow Turbans. To show the emperor's gratitude, the imperial court promoted Cao Cao to the position of Administrator of Jinan. Several years elapsed before he returned to Luoyang.

When Dong Zhuo entered Luoyang with his troops, as part of his plan to increase his popularity he bought the loyalty of some officials by offering favors and patronage. Aware of Cao Cao's fame, he promoted him to Subcommander of Courageous Guards. However, as he was not willing to serve under someone he did not respect, Cao Cao fled Luoyang at great risk to stay with his father in Chenliu (today's Chenliu County in Henan).

Once back in Chenliu, Cao Cao got his father's backing in financing an expeditionary army against Dong Zhuo. A wealthy man, Wei Zi, also contributed a great deal of money and food to help. Cao Cao's cousin Cao Hong also arrived with a thousand men to reinforce Cao Cao's army, which eventually soon grew to number around five thousand men. Cao Cao placed his troops under intensive combat training and sent out scouts to gather information about the situations in various places.

自从黄巾起义后，各州各郡，都拥有一支人马。许多州郡的刺史、太守，本来有割据野心，趁洛阳大乱，借声讨董卓的名义，纷纷起兵。其中声势最大的要数袁绍。

袁绍自从在洛阳同董卓闹翻以后，跑到冀州，当了渤海太守。因为袁绍是个大士族，冀州牧韩馥又是袁家的老部下，所以袁绍很快就在渤海郡组织了一支人马。

公元190年，曹操和各路讨伐董卓大军一共十几万人马，在陈留附近的酸枣（今河南延津西南）集合，组成一支联军，大家推袁绍做盟主。

各地起兵的消息传到洛阳，董卓有点害怕起来。他不顾大臣们反对，决定把汉献帝和上百万人口迁到长安，自己留在洛阳附近对付联军。献帝被迫离开洛阳的时候，董卓放了一把火，把宫室、官府、民房，全部烧掉。洛阳周围二百多

In response to the Yellow Turbans rebellion, every region and every commandery had raised their own armies. Governors of many regions had long harbored ambitions to carve out their own individual kingdoms, and the anarchy in Luoyang gave them the opportunity to raise arms under the pretense of ousting Dong Zhuo. Yuan Shao commanded the largest expeditionary force of all.

After having fallen out with Dong Zhuo, Yuan Shao had left Luoyang to go to Jizhou, where he became governor of Bohai. Helped by the fact that he came from a prominent family of mandarins, as well as the fact that Han Fu, the governor of Jizhou, had served in the troops loyal to the Yuan family in the past, Yuan Shao had no trouble raising an army in a short space of time in Bohai.

In 190 AD, the various expeditionary forces (including the one led by Cao Cao) totaling more than a hundred thousand men converged in Suanzao (southwest of today's Yanjin in Henan), not far from Chenliu. They were then organized into an allied force under the command of Yuan Shao, who had been chosen as leader of the alliance.

When news of the creation of these expeditionary forces reached Luoyang, fear grew in Dong Zhuo's heart. Over the objections of the ministers, he decided to move Emperor Xian and a million people to Chang'an, while he staying behind in the Luoyang area to face the allied force himself. As Emperor Xian reluctantly left Luoyang, Dong Zhuo set fire to all the palaces, government buildings and civilian dwellings in the city. Within a radius of two hundred li of Luoyang, everything was burned to the ground. Many of the

里以内，被烧得鸡犬不留。老百姓被迫离开洛阳，路上有饿死的，被踩死的，打死的，倒在路边的尸体不计其数。

但是，在酸枣附近讨伐董卓的联军却互相观望，按兵不动。有一次，各路将领在袁绍的大营开会，曹操对大家说：“大家起兵，为的是讨伐董卓。现在董卓劫走天子，烧毁官室，全国人心惶惶。这正是消灭逆贼的好时机，为什么还要犹豫不决呢？”

尽管曹操说得慷慨激昂，大家可一点也不热心。连盟主袁绍都不想动，谁还愿意先动手呢？

曹操看出他们只想保存实力，不想打董卓，心里憋生气，就决定单独带着五千人马，向成皋（今河南荥阳汜水镇）进兵。

董卓听到曹操向成皋进兵，早已派大军在汜水（在今河南荥阳西南，汜音biàn）边布好阵势。曹操的人马刚刚到了汜水，就遇到董卓部将徐荣的拦击。

徐荣兵多，曹操兵少，两下里一交战，曹操的人马就垮了下来。曹操骑着马往后撤走的时候，肩上中了一箭，他赶紧拍马逃奔，又是一支箭，射伤了曹操骑的马。那马一受惊，把曹操掀了下来。

civilians forcibly displaced from Luoyang died on the road, either from starvation, from being trampled in the panic or from fighting. Roads leading from the capital were strewn with countless corpses.

Meanwhile, the allied forces were waiting in Suanzao. At a meeting of commanding officers in Yuan Shao's tent, Cao Cao said to those present, "We are here to oust Dong Zhuo. Now that he has abducted the emperor and burned down the palaces, there is widespread anxiety in the country. This is our best opportunity to eliminate the traitor. Why are we still hesitating?"

Cao Cao's impassioned plea failed to elicit an enthusiastic response. Even Yuan Shao, the leader of the alliance, showed apathy. No one was willing to be the first to launch an offensive.

Cao Cao realized that they were more interested in preserving their fighting strength than in battling Dong Zhuo. He decided to go it alone and marched with his five thousand troops toward Chenggao (today's town of Sishui in Xingyang, Henan).

Alerted of Cao Cao's advance on Chenggao, Dong Zhuo arrayed his troops on the banks of the Bian River (southwest of today's Xingyang in Henan), in order to intercept him. No sooner had Cao Cao's army reached the Bian River than Dong Zhuo's general Xu Rong cut it off.

Outnumbered by Xu Rong's troops, Cao Cao's army was routed in the very first encounter. Cao Cao was shot in the shoulder by an arrow as he rode away in retreat. Another arrow then hit his horse, which startled it so much that it panicked and threw Cao Cao to the ground.

后面徐荣的追兵呐喊声越来越近。正在危急的时候，幸亏曹洪赶上，他跳下马来，扶起曹操。曹操骑上曹洪的马，才脱了险。

曹操损兵折将，回到酸枣，再看看他的同盟军，不但按兵不动，将领们还每天喝酒作乐，根本没想讨伐董卓。

他两心气愤，跑到袁绍他们摆酒宴的地方，指责他们说：“你们以起义兵为名，却在这里犹豫观望，让天下百姓失望。我真替你们害臊呢。”

过了不久，酸枣的几十万兵马把粮食全消耗完，就散伙了。

曹操经过这一次讨伐战斗，觉得跟这些人一起，根本成不了大事，就单独到扬州（今安徽淮水和江苏长江以南）一带招募人马，准备重整旗鼓。

Xu Rong's soldiers were closing in on Cao Cao, who could hear their battle cries with increasing clarity. Fortunately, Cao Hong arrived in the nick of time. He jumped off his horse and helped Cao Cao to his feet; they were able to ride off together on Cao Hong's horse to safety.

When Cao Cao returned to Suanzao after suffering heavy losses, he found the other allied forces still holding back their troops, while their generals were drinking and carousing without giving any thought to fighting Dong Zhuo.

Filled with indignation he went to where Yuan Shao and others were having a feast and reproached them. "You have come here with your troops ostensibly to oust a usurper, but you are wavering and taking a wait-and-see attitude. You've let the country down and I feel ashamed for you!"

Very soon the hundreds of thousands of troops camping in Suanzao had depleted all their food rations and dispersed.

This experience convinced Cao Cao that he would not be able to accomplish much if he continued to associate with these men. He went alone to Yangzhou (south of the Huai River and the Yangtze in Jiangsu) to raise an army with a view to returning in the future.

3、王允计除董卓

董卓在洛阳的时候，就杀了一批官员，到了长安以后，更加专横跋扈。文武官员说话一不小心，触犯了他，就丢了脑袋。一些大臣怕保不住自己性命，都暗暗地想除掉这个坏蛋。

董卓手下有一个心腹，名叫吕布，是一个出名的勇士。吕布的力气特别大，射箭骑马的武艺，十分高强。他本来是并州刺史丁原的部下。董卓进洛阳的时候，丁原正带兵驻守洛阳。董卓派人用大批财物去拉拢吕布，要吕布杀死丁原。吕布被董卓收买，背叛了丁原，投靠董卓。

董卓把吕布收作干儿子，叫吕布随身保护他。他走到哪里，吕布就跟到哪儿。人们害怕吕布的勇猛，就只好对董卓下手。

司徒王允决心除掉董卓。他知道要除掉董卓，先要拉拢他身边的吕布。他就常常请吕布到他家里，一起喝酒聊天。日

3. Wang Yun Snares Dong Zhuo

Dong Zhuo had already presided over the execution of a large number of officials in Luoyang, but after the move to Chang'an he became even more of a tyrant. Officials and military officers had to choose their words very carefully in Dong Zhuo's presence because if they offended him they risked their necks. Some ministers entertained a secret desire to get rid of this scoundrel, if only to ensure their own survival.

Dong Zhuo had a trusted subaltern called Lú Bu, a renowned warrior with amazing physical strength and outstanding archery and equestrian skills. He had at an earlier time served under Ding Yuan, governor of Bingzhou. When Dong Zhuo marched into Luoyang, Ding Yuan was in command of the troops defending the capital. Dong Zhuo began to ply Lu Bu with precious gifts in order to encourage him to kill Ding Yuan. Lu Bu succumbed to Dong Zhuo's offers and betrayed Ding Yuan.

Dong Zhuo adopted Lú Bu as his godson and even entrusted his personal safety to him, and from that time onward Lu Bu would follow Dong Zhuo around like a shadow in his capacity as bodyguard. His brawn and bravery served to act as a deterrent to attempts on Dong Zhuo's life.

Meanwhile, the minister of education Wang Yun was determined to eliminate Dong Zhuo. He knew that to get at Dong Zhuo, he must first of all get past Lu Bu. He therefore invited Lú Bu to his home for frequent get-togethers to chat

子久了，吕布觉得王允待他好，也就把他跟董卓的关系谈了出来。

原来，吕布跟董卓虽说是父子关系，但是董卓性格暴躁，稍不如他的意，就向吕布发火。有一次，吕布说话顶撞了他，董卓竟将身边的戟扔了过去。幸亏吕布眼明手快，把身子一侧，躲过了飞来的戟，没有被刺着。

后来，吕布向董卓赔了礼，董卓也表示宽恕他。但是，吕布心里很不痛快。他把这件事告诉了王允。王允听了挺高兴，就把自己想杀董卓的打算也告诉了吕布，并且说：“董卓是国贼，我们想为民除害，您能不能帮助我们，做个内应？”

吕布听到真要杀董卓，倒有点犹豫起来，说：“我是他的干儿子，儿子怎么能杀父亲呢？”

王允摇摇头说：“唉，将军真糊涂，您姓吕，他姓董，本来不是骨肉至亲。再说，他向您掷戟的时候，还有一点父子的感情吗？”

吕布听了，觉得王允说得有道理，就答应跟王允一起干。

公元192年，汉献帝生了一场病刚刚痊愈，在未央宫会见大臣。董卓为了提防人家暗算，他在朝服里面穿上铁甲。在

over a glass of wine. As time went on, Wang Yun's friendship won over Lu Bu, who began to reveal the truth about his relationship with Dong Zhuo.

It turned out that notwithstanding their father-son relationship, the irascible Dong Zhuo would often vent his fury on Lü Bu when he felt even the slightest frustration. In one instance Dong Zhuo hurled a halberd at Lü Bu for a defiant comment. Had it not been for Lü Bu's agility and quick reflexes, he would have been seriously injured.

Lü Bu apologized to Dong Zhuo after the incident and received absolution but the incident rankled in his heart. After hearing this, Wang Yun then told Lü Bu about his plan to assassinate Dong Zhuo. "Dong Zhuo is an enemy of the state and needs to be removed from power. Can you help by offering support from the inside?"

However, Lü Bu became hesitant at the idea of harming Dong Zhuo. "I am his adopted son. How can a son kill his father?"

Shaking his head, Wang Yun said, "My general, don't be ridiculous! Your surname is Lü and his is Dong. You are not related by blood. Besides, where was his fatherly affection when he hurled the halberd at you?"

Lü Bu found Wang Yun's analysis to make sense and agreed to be a party to the plot.

One day in 192 AD, Emperor Xian, who had recently recovered from an illness, called a meeting of his ministers in Weiyang Palace. As a precaution against assassination attempts, Dong Zhuo wore armor under his official robe and deployed two solid walls of armed guards to form a secure

乘车进宫的大路两旁，派卫兵密密麻麻排成一条夹道。他还叫吕布带着长矛在他身后保卫着。经过这样安排，他认为万无一失了。

他哪儿知道王允和吕布早已商量好了。吕布约了几个心腹勇士扮作卫士混在队伍里，专门在宫门口守着。董卓的座车一进宫门，就有人拿起戟向董卓的胸口刺去。但是戟扎在董卓胸前铁甲上，刺不进去。

董卓用胳膊一挡，被戟刺伤了手臂。他忍着痛跳下车，叫着说：“吕布在哪儿？”

吕布从车后站出来，高声宣布说：“奉皇上诏书，讨伐贼臣董卓！”

董卓见他的干儿子背叛了他，就骂着说：“狗奴才，你敢……”

他的话还没说完，吕布已经举起长矛，一下子戳穿了董卓的喉头。兵士们拥了上去，把董卓的头砍了下来。

corridor around him, leading all the way to the palace. With Lü Bu protecting him with a lance just a step behind, Dong Zhuo felt he was fully protected and secure.

How was he to know that Wang Yun and Lü Bu had already agreed on a plan? Lü Bu planted a number of trusted warriors among the guards manning the secure corridor at the gate of the palace. As soon as Dong Zhuo's carriage went through the gate, someone thrust a halberd at his chest. However, it did not pierce the armor he wore beneath his robe.

Dong Zhuo's arm was wounded as he raised it to parry the thrust. Braving the pain, he jumped from his carriage and cried, "Where is Lu Bu?"

Lü Bu stepped out from behind the carriage and announced in a booming voice, "By imperial edict, I am here to take the traitor Dong Zhuo!"

When he saw that he had been betrayed by his son, Dong Zhuo railed at Lü Bu, "You dog of a slave! I dare you to..."

Yet before he had time to finish the sentence, Lü Bu's raised lance had already pierced Dong Zhuo's throat. The soldiers swarmed toward Dong Zhuo and cut off his head.

4、曹操煮酒论英雄

董卓之乱以后，东汉王朝名存实亡，对各地州郡失去了控制。各地官僚、豪强趁机争夺地盘，形成了大大小小的割据势力。势力比较大的有冀州的袁绍、南阳的袁术、荆州（约当今湖北、湖南两省和河南、贵州、广东、广西的一部）的刘表、徐州（约当今江苏长江以北和山东东南部）的陶谦、吕布等，他们相互混战，打得昏天黑地。成千上万的百姓在混战中遭到屠杀，许多地方出现了没有人烟的荒凉景象。

曹操本来势力很小。后来，他打败了攻进兖州（今山东省西南部和河南省东部，兖音 yǎn）的黄巾军，在兖州建立了一个据点。他还从黄巾军的降兵中，挑选一部分精锐力量，扩大了武装。以后，他又打败了陶谦和吕布，成为一个强大的割据力量。

公元196年，曹操把汉献帝迎到了许城，打那时候起，许城成了东汉临时的都城，因此称为许都。

4. Cao Cao Discusses Heroes over Wine

Since Dong Zhuo's death, the Eastern Han dynasty had been on its last legs. With the loss of central control over many of the regions, local bureaucrats and gentry took advantage of the power vacuum to grab spheres of influence and establish semi-independent kingdom of varying sizes. The more powerful local rulers included Yuan Shao of Jizhou, Yuan Shu of Nanyang, Liu Biao of Jingzhou (straddling today's Hubei and Hunan Provinces and parts of Henan, Guizhou, Guangdong and Guangxi), Tao Qian of Xuzhou (the part of Jiangsu north of the Yangtze and southeastern Shandong) and Lu Bu. They were in perpetual turf wars with one another, engulfing the country in turmoil and claiming the lives of hundreds of thousands of civilians. Many towns and villages were left deserted and in ruins.

Cao Cao's force started out small. After defeating the Yellow Turbans that captured Yanzhou (the southwestern part of today's Shandong and the eastern part of Henan), he established a foothold there. From among the Yellow Turbans that had surrendered to him, he selected the best soldiers to augment his armed force. He went on to defeat Tao Qian and Lū Bu and establish a powerful regime of his own.

In 196 AD, Cao Cao installed Emperor Xian of the Han dynasty in Xucheng, which thus became the interim capital of the Eastern Han dynasty and was named Xudu ("du" means capital).

曹操在许都给汉献帝建立了宫殿，让献帝正式上朝。曹操自封为大将军，用皇帝的名义号令天下，又采用屯田办法，解决了军粮问题，还吸收了一批有才能的谋士，他的实力就更加强大起来了。

曹操迎汉献帝到许都的那年，徐州牧刘备，受到袁术、吕布的夹攻，失败了，来投奔曹操。

刘备是河北涿郡（今河北涿县）人，原来是西汉皇室的后代。他从小死了父亲，家境很贫苦，跟他母亲一起靠贩鞋织席过日子。后来，靠同族人的帮助，才拜老师读了一点书。可是他不大爱读书，却喜欢结交豪杰。有两个贩马的大商人经过涿郡，见了刘备，很器重他，就出钱帮助他招兵买马。

当时，有两个壮士到涿郡应募，一个名叫关羽，一个名叫张飞。刘备见关羽、张飞两人武艺高强，又跟他志同道合，就待他们特别亲切。日子一久，三个人的感情真比亲兄弟还深厚。

刘备投奔曹操以后，曹操和刘备一起去攻打吕布，消灭

Cao Cao built a palace for Emperor Xian in Xudu so that the emperor could hold court there. Cao Cao named himself General-in-chief and was the real power behind the throne. He assured the supply of rations for his troops by creating a system combining garrison duty with land cultivation, and by surrounding himself with capable advisers he further enlarged his power base.

In the year of Emperor Xian's arrival in Xudu, Liu Bei, the governor of Xuzhou, came to Cao Cao to offer his services following his defeat by Yuan Shu and Lü Bu, who had mounted a coordinated attack against him.

Liu Bei was from the Zhuo Commandery of Hebei (today's Zhuo County in Hebei) and was descended from the royalty of the Western Han dynasty. His father had died when he was a child and had left behind an impoverished household subsisting on meager earnings brought in by Liu Bei and his mother from selling shoes and weaving mats. With help from his clansmen, he was later able to acquire a basic education from a local tutor. However, his real interest did not lie in learning but in fighting for great causes. Two prosperous horse traders passing through the Zhuo Commandery got to know Liu Bei and developed a high regard for him. They provided funding for his effort to raise an army.

The effort attracted two men eager to take up Liu Bei's cause: Guan Yu and Zhang Fei. Liu Bei was deeply impressed by their combat skills and their commitment to the same cause, and soon developed a special affection for them. As time went by, the three became closer than brothers.

After Liu Bei joined forces with Cao Cao, they launched

了吕布的割据势力。回到许都，曹操请汉献帝封刘备为左将军，并且非常尊重刘备，进进出出，都要刘备陪他在一起。

刘备见曹操这样尊重他，心里反倒不安，因为他有自己的雄心大志，生怕遭到曹操的猜疑。

曹操表面上看重刘备，暗地里也在防备他。他派人去看刘备在家里干什么，只见刘备在自己园子里种菜浇水，没有什么可疑，也就渐渐放心了。

有一天，曹操邀请刘备去喝酒。两个人一面喝酒，一面有说有笑，谈得很融洽。他们谈着谈着，很自然地谈到天下大事上来了。

曹操拿起酒杯，说：“您看现在那么多人在争夺天下，有几个算得上英雄呢？”

刘备谦虚地说：“我说不上来。”

曹操面带笑容，从容地对刘备说：“依我看，当代的天下英雄，只有将军和我曹操两个人。像袁绍这号人，算不上什么。”

刘备为了跟董承同谋的事，心里正在七上八下，听到曹操这句话，大吃一惊，身子打了一个寒战，连手里的筷子也掉了下来。

an attack against Lu Bu, as a result of which Lu Bu's kingdom was annihilated. Upon their triumphant return to Xudu, Cao Cao recommended to Emperor Xian that Liu Bei be made Left Leader of Court Gentlemen. He showed great respect for Liu Bei and insisted on his new friend's company wherever he went.

Liu Bei was uneasy about the respect Cao Cao showed him, since he was worried that his own ambitions might arouse Cao Cao's suspicions.

Behind his publicly-avowed high regard for Liu Bei, Cao Cao was privately keeping a close eye on him. He often sent his soldiers to covertly spy on Liu Bei. They would invariably find him planting and watering vegetables in his garden, and failed to detect any sign of suspicious goings-on. In this way, Cao Cao's fears were gradually allayed.

One evening, Cao Cao invited Liu Bei to join him for a drink. The two of them had a pleasant chat over wine. Their conversation segued from one thing to another until they eventually turned to the political situation of the country.

"So many are fighting for control of the country. In your opinion, how many of them can accurately be called heroes?" Cao Cao asked.

"I am not sure," Liu Bei replied.

Cao Cao flashed a smile. "As I see it, there are only two heroes in this country: you, honorable general, and myself. Yuan Shao and the like don't count."

Liu Bei had already been nervous about his secret dealings with Dong Cheng; this pronouncement from Cao Cao sent a chill down his spine, causing him to drop his chopsticks.

就在这节骨眼上，天边闪过一道电光，接着就雷声隆隆起一声响雷。刘备一面低下身子拾筷子，一面说：“这个响雷可厉害，把人吓成这个样子。”

就这样，他总算把惊慌的神情掩饰过去，没让曹操看出破绽。

喝完酒出来，刘备再三捉摸曹操的话，觉得曹操把他看作唯一的敌手，将来不会轻易放过他。打这以后，他一面和董承他们联络，共同设法除掉曹操，一面找机会离开许都。

凑巧袁绍派他儿子到青州去接应袁术，要通过徐州。曹操认为刘备熟悉那一带的情况，就派他去截击袁术。

刘备巴不得趁早离开，一接到曹操命令，就飞快地和关羽、张飞带着人马走了。

曹操的谋士郭嘉等听到曹操放走刘备，赶快去找曹操，说：“刘备有野心，不能放他走呀！”

经郭嘉一提醒，曹操也有些懊悔了，马上派人去追，刘备已经走远了。

A bolt of lightning flashed across the sky just at this moment, followed by a burst of thunder. Liu Bei bent down to pick up the chopsticks, saying, "That crash of thunder really scared the wits out of me!"

He was thus able to dissimulate the disconcertment caused by Cao Cao's remark and Cao Cao did not seem to detect any unusual reaction in Liu Bei.

Afterwards, Liu Bei gave much thought to Cao Cao's remark about heroes. He came to the conclusion that Cao Cao was treating him as his sole rival and would surely not make life easy for him. Though he kept up his meetings with Dong Cheng to form a plan to eliminate Cao Cao, he also began looking for an opportunity to leave Xudu.

At this time Yuan Shao happened to send his son to Qingzhou to reinforce Yuan Shu's army; he would have to pass through Xuzhou on his way. Knowing that Liu Bei was familiar with that area, Cao Cao sent him to intercept Yuan Shu. This was the opportunity he had been looking for. Liu Bei therefore lost no time in following Cao Cao's orders and taking Guan Yu, Zhang Fei and their troops on the road.

When Cao Cao's adviser Guo Jia learned that Cao Cao had allowed Liu Bei to leave, he rushed over to Cao Cao and said, "Liu Bei has grand ambitions. You shouldn't have let him leave."

Sobered by Guo Jia's warning, Cao Cao began to regret his decision and immediately sent his men after Liu Bei's party. However, by this time Liu Bei was out of reach.

刘备打败了袁术，夺取了徐州，决定不回许都去了。徐州本来是刘备做过州牧的地方，附近的郡县都响应他，背叛了曹操。

曹操一听到刘备背叛他，气得要命，决心亲自发兵征讨刘备。

第二年春天，曹操大军进攻徐州，刘备兵少，抵挡不住曹操的进攻，只好放弃徐州往冀州投奔袁绍。

After defeating Yuan Shu and capturing Xuzhou, Liu Bei decided not to return to Xudu. Since Liu Bei had been a good governor of the region of Xuzhou in the past, the nearby commanderies and counties switched their allegiance from Cao Cao to him.

Cao Cao was furious at Liu Bei's betrayal and decided to personally lead an expedition against him.

In the following spring, Cao Cao launched a large-scale attack against Xuzhou. Liu Bei's troops were too few in number to put up a large scale defense and soon buckled under Cao Cao's offensive. Liu Bei had no alternative but to abandon Xuzhou and take his troops to Jizhou to join Yuan Shao.

5、官渡大战

刘备逃到了鄆城（冀州的治所，在今河北临漳西南），袁绍才感到曹操是个强大的敌人，决心进攻许都。

公元200年，袁绍集中了十万精兵，派沮授（沮音jǔ）为监军，从鄆城出发进兵黎阳（今河南浚县）。他先派大将颜良渡过黄河，进攻白马（今河南滑县）。

这时候，曹操早已率领兵马回到官渡，听到白马被困，准备亲自去救。他的谋士荀攸劝他说：“敌人兵多，我们人少，不能跟他们硬拼。不如分一部分人马往西在延津（今河南延津西北）一带假装渡河，把袁军主力引到西边。我们就派一支轻骑兵到白马，打他个措手不及。”

曹操采纳了荀攸的意见，来个声东击西。袁绍听说曹操要在延津渡河，果然派大军来堵截。哪儿知道曹操已经亲自带领一支轻骑兵袭击白马，包围白马的袁军大将颜良没防备，被曹军杀得大败。颜良被杀，白马之围也解除了。

5. The Battle of Guandu

Liu Bei's flight to Jizhou (southwest of today's Linzhang in Hebei) finally convinced Yuan Shao that Cao Cao was a formidable foe and so he steeled his resolve to capture Xudu.

In 200 AD, Yuan Shao created a 100,000-strong elite force with Ju Shou as Army Supervisor to march to Liyang (today's Jun County in Henan). He first ordered General Yan Liang to cross the Yellow River to attack Baima (today's Hua County in Henan).

At this time, Cao Cao had already returned to Guandu with his troops. When he learned of the siege of Baima, he wanted to head straight to the scene of the battle to lift the siege. His adviser Xun You warned him against it. "We are outnumbered by the enemy. Instead of confronting them we could divert part of our troops to go west and pretend to cross the river at Yanjin. This would draw Yuan Shao's main force away to the west. We would then send a light cavalry to attack Baima when they least expect it."

Cao Cao decided to adopt the diversionary tactic suggested by Xun You. When Yuan Shao heard that Cao Cao planned to cross the river at Yanjin, he sent a large force to head Cao Cao off, little knowing that the latter had led a light cavalry to attack Baima. The Yuan army under the command of General Yan Liang that was laying siege to Baima was caught off guard and routed by the Cao army. General Yan was killed and the siege of Baima was lifted.

袁绍听得曹操救了白马，气得直跳脚。监军沮授劝袁绍把主力留在延津南面，分一部分兵力出击。但是袁绍心急火燎，不听沮授劝告，下令全军渡河追击曹军，并且派大将文丑率领五六千骑兵打先锋。这时候，曹操从白马向官渡撤退。听说袁军来追，就把六百名骑兵埋伏在延津南坡，叫兵士解下马鞍，让马在山坡下溜达，把武器盔甲丢得满地都是。

文丑的骑兵赶到南坡，看见这样子，认为曹军已经逃远了，叫兵士收拾那丢在地上的武器。曹操一声令下，六百名伏兵一齐冲杀出来。袁军来不及抵抗，被杀得七零八落。文丑也糊里糊涂地丢了脑袋。

两场仗打下来，袁绍一连损失了他手下的颜良、文丑两员大将，袁军将士被打得垂头丧气。但是袁绍不肯罢休，一定要追击曹操。监军沮授说：“我们人尽管多，可没像曹军那

Yuan Shao was furious when he learned that Cao Cao had lifted the siege of Baima. Ju Shou, the Army Supervisor, advised Yuan Shao to send only part of his troops to fight Cao Cao, while keeping his main force south of Yanjin. However, the distraught Yuan Shao dismissed Ju Shou's idea and ordered all of his troops to cross the river in pursuit of Cao Cao's army. He then put General Wen Chou in charge of six thousand cavalrymen. As Cao Cao withdrew his forces from Baima to march toward Guandu, he received intelligence that Yuan Shao was hot on his trail. He set up an ambush of six hundred cavalrymen near the south hills of Yanjin, with instructions to unsaddle the horses and let them loose to roam the hills. The soldiers were also to leave their weapons and suits of armor strewn about on the ground.

When Wen Chou's cavalrymen reached the south hills and saw the abandoned horses and weapons, they were led to believe that the fleeing Cao force was far in the distance. When Wen Chou ordered his soldiers to retrieve the weapons strewn about on the ground, six hundred ambushers leapt out of hiding to attack them. The Yuan troops were taken by surprise and suffered heavy casualties, while Wen Chou was killed before he had time to figure out what was happening.

Yuan Shao had lost two generals, Yan Liang and Wen Chou, in two battles—morale therefore sank very low among the Yuan troops. Yet Yuan Shao refused to take it lying down and insisted on pursuing Cao Cao. Ju Shou, the Army Supervisor, said, "We may have a greater number of troops, but they lack the fierce fighting spirit of the Cao army. Cao Cao's troops are fierce fighters on the battleground. However, we have a larger

么勇猛，曹军虽然勇猛，但是粮食没有我们多。所以我们还是坚守在这里，等曹军粮草完了，他们自然会退兵。”

袁绍又不听沮授劝告，命令将士继续进军，一直赶到官渡，才扎下营寨。曹操的人马也早已回到官渡，布置好阵势，坚守营垒。

袁绍看到曹军守住营垒，就吩咐兵士在曹营外面堆起土山，筑起高台，让兵士们在高台上居高临下向曹营射箭。曹军只得用盾牌遮住身子，在军营里走动。

曹操跟谋士们一商量，设计了一种霹雳车。这种车上装着机轴。兵士们扳动机轴，把十几斤重的石头发出去，打塌了袁军的高台，许多袁军兵士被打得头破血流。

袁绍吃了亏，又想出一个办法。他叫兵士在深夜里偷偷地挖地道，打算从地道里钻到曹营去偷袭。但是他们的行动早被曹军发现。曹操吩咐兵士在兵营前挖了一条又长又深的壕沟，切断地道的出口。袁绍的偷袭计划又失败了。

就这样，双方在官渡相持了一个多月。日子一久，曹军粮食越来越少，兵士疲劳不堪。曹操也有点支持不住，写信

supply of rations than they do. We should wait here until the Cao force runs out of supplies. They will move out of here of their own accord when that happens."

Ignoring Ju Shou's advice once again, Yuan Shao ordered his troops to continue their march until they came to Guandu, where they pitched their tents. By that time, Cao Cao had returned to Guandu and finished deploying his troops behind stockades and other defenses.

Seeing that the Cao troops had barricaded themselves, Yuan Shao ordered his soldiers to construct earth mounds and high structures outside the Cao camp so that they could shoot arrows into it from a high vantage point. This meant that the soldiers inside the Cao camp were forced to constantly move around behind shields.

In response, Cao Cao and his advisers devised a catapult that could hurl large stones weighing a dozen jin when a mechanism on it was released. The stones smashed the high structures built by the Yuan troops, many of whom were injured by the flying projectiles.

Yuan Shao then countered with another stratagem. Under cover of night, he had his soldiers dig a tunnel, with the intention of using it for a stealth attack. However, the secret undertaking did not escape the notice of the Cao camp and Cao Cao instructed his soldiers to dig a long, deep trench at the front edge of his camp to cut off the enemy tunnel, thus thwarting the surprise attack planned by Yuan Shao.

When the stand-off at Guandu entered its second month, supplies were beginning to become depleted in the Cao camp, and the soldiers seemed increasingly weary and worn out.

到许都告诉荀彧，准备退兵。荀彧回信，劝曹操无论如何要坚持下去。

这时候，袁绍方面的军粮却从邺城源源不断地运来。袁绍派大将淳于琼带领一万人马运送军粮，并把大批军粮囤积在离官渡四十里的乌巢。

袁绍的谋士许攸探听到曹操缺粮的情报，向袁绍献计，劝袁绍派出一小支人马，绕过官渡，偷袭许都。袁绍很冷淡地说：“不行，我要先打败曹操。”

许攸还想劝他，正好有人从邺城送给袁绍一封信，说许攸家里的人在那里犯法，已经被当地官员逮了起来。袁绍看了信，把许攸狠狠地责骂了一通。

许攸又气又恨，想起曹操是他的老朋友，就连夜逃出袁营，投奔曹操。

曹操在大营里刚脱下靴子想睡，听说许攸来投奔他，高兴得来不及穿靴子，光着脚板跑出来欢迎许攸，说：“好啊！您来了，我的大事就有希望了。”

Even Cao Cao showed signs of nearing breaking point. He wrote to Xun Yu in Xudu about his intention to stand down and withdraw his force. Xun Yu wrote back urging him to hold his ground at all costs.

In the meantime, Yuan Shao was receiving a steady supply of rations for his troops from Yecheng. Yuan Shao entrusted his general Chun Yuqiong with the task of escorting the rations with ten thousand troops, and large amounts of them were stored in Wuchao, 40 li from Guandu.

Having confirmed the intelligence that the Cao camp was running out of supplies, Yuan Shao's adviser Xu You proposed that a small force be sent to launch a surprise attack on Xudu, bypassing Guandu. The idea met a cold reception from Yuan Shao. "No! I want to defeat Cao Cao first!" he said.

Just as Xu You got ready to make a further effort to persuade Yuan Shao of the soundness of his idea, Yuan Shao received a letter from Yecheng. It informed him that someone from Xu You's household had broken the law and had been arrested by the local authorities. After reading the letter, Yuan Shao began to shout at his adviser.

Filled with hurt and rancor, Xu You remembered his old friend Cao Cao and that very night he abandoned the Yuan camp to go over to Cao Cao.

Cao Cao had taken off his boots and was getting ready for bed in his tent when he was told that Xu You had come to offer his service. He was so excited that he rushed out barefoot to greet Xu You, saying, "Very good! With your help I have a better chance of success."

许攸坐下来后说：“袁绍来势很猛，您打算怎么对付他？现在你们的粮食还有多少？”

曹操说：“还可以支持一年。”

许攸冷冷一笑，说：“没有那么多吧！”

曹操改口说：“对，只能支持半年。”

许攸装出生气的样子说：“您难道不想打败袁绍吗？为什么在老朋友面前还要说假话呢！”

曹操只好实说：“军营里的粮食，只能维持一个月，您看怎么办？”

许攸说：“我知道您的情况很危急，特地来给您捎个信。现在袁绍有一万多车粮食、军械，全都放在乌巢。淳于琼的防备很松，您只要带一支轻骑兵去袭击，把他的粮草全部烧光，不出三天，他就不战自败。”

曹操得到这个重要情报，立刻把荀攸、曹洪找来，吩咐他们守好官渡大营，自己带领五千骑兵，连夜向乌巢进发。他们打着袁军的旗号，沿路遇到袁军的岗哨查问，就说是袁绍派去增援乌巢的。袁军的岗哨没有怀疑，就放他们过去了。

曹军到了乌巢，就围住乌巢粮屯，放起一把火，把一万

After sitting down, Xu You said, "Yuan Shao is preparing a strong offensive. How do you plan to deal with him? How much do you have in the way of supplies?"

"We have enough for a year," Cao Cao replied.

Xu You laughed. "No, really?"

"No, we have just enough for six months," Cao Cao corrected himself.

Feigning anger, Xu You asked, "Don't you wish to defeat Yuan Shao? Why do you lie to an old friend?"

Cao Cao finally told the truth. "To be frank with you, our rations will only last a month. What do you think we should do?"

"I have heard about the critical plight you are in. I have come to you with valuable information. Yuan Shao has ten thousand carts of rations and weapons stored in Wuchao. They are maintained under lax guard by the troops of Chun Yuqiong. All you need to do is attack Wuchao with a light cavalry and torch all his rations. Within three days his force will crumble without a shot fired." Xu You replied.

After receiving this important intelligence, Cao Cao immediately summoned Xun You and Cao Hong. He gave them instructions to defend the barracks at Guandu while he himself led five thousand cavalymen on a night march toward Wuchao. They carried flags and standards of the Yuan army, and whenever they were challenged by sentinels they would say they had been sent by Yuan Shao to reinforce Wuchao. The unsuspecting Yuan sentinels let them through.

Once in Wuchao, Cao Cao's troops surrounded the granaries and started a huge fire that destroyed ten thousand carts of

车粮食，烧得个一干二净。乌巢的守将淳于琼匆忙应战，也被曹军杀了。

正在官渡的袁军将士听说乌巢起火，都惊慌失措。袁绍手下的两员大将张郃（音 hé）、高览带兵投降。曹军乘势猛攻，袁军四下逃散。袁绍和他的儿子袁谭，连盔甲也来不及穿戴，带着剩下的八百多骑兵向北逃走。

经过这场决战，袁绍的主力已经消灭。过了两年，袁绍病死。曹操又花了七年工夫，扫平了袁绍的残余势力，统一了北方。

grains. When Chun Yuqiong, the general guarding the granaries, arrived to engage the enemy, he was killed by the Cao troops.

When news of the blaze in Wuchao reached the Yuan troops in Guandu, they were thrown into a panic. Two of Yuan Shao's generals, Zhang He and Gao Lan, surrendered with their troops to the Cao camp. Emboldened by this success, the Cao troops launched a fierce offensive that routed the Yuan troops. Yuan Shao and his son Yuan Tan did not even have time to don their armor before they took the remaining eight hundred cavalymen with them on a northward flight.

Yuan Shao's main force was annihilated in this decisive battle. Two years later, Yuan Shao died. After another seven years of fighting, Cao Cao finally wiped out Yuan Shao's remaining forces and unified north China.

6、孙策占据江东

当曹操和袁绍在北方激烈争夺的时候，南方有一支割据势力逐渐壮大起来，这就是占据江东（今长江下游的江南地区）的孙策、孙权兄弟。

孙策的父亲是长沙太守孙坚，原是袁术的部下。孙坚死后，孙策带兵投靠袁术。袁术看他少年英俊，很喜欢他，对别人说：“要是我能有像孙郎那样的儿子，我死了也安心。”

话虽这样说，袁术可并不重用孙策。孙策曾经想当一个郡太守，袁术没让他做。孙策的舅父吴景在江东丹阳（今安徽宣城）当太守，被扬州刺史刘繇（音 yóu）逼走。孙策向袁术要求让他到江东去帮舅父打刘繇。袁术跟刘繇也有矛盾，才拨了一千人马给孙策。

孙策向南进兵。一路上，有许多人投奔他。到了历阳（今

6. Sun Ce Takes Control of Jiangdong

When Cao Cao and Yuan Shao were slugging it out in the north, a separate regime rose and grew stronger under the brothers Sun Ce and Sun Quan in Jiangdong (in the lower reaches of the Yangtze River).

Sun Ce's father Sun Jian was governor of Changsha and had served under Yuan Shu. After Sun Jian's death, Sun Ce went over to Yuan Shu with his troops. Yuan Shu took a liking to this handsome young man and was often heard to say, "If I had a son like Sun Ce, I would ask no more of life."

Despite this professed good will, Yuan Shu did not particularly value Sun Ce's services. Sun Ce wished to become a commandery governor, but Yuan Shu would not promote him to this position. Sun Ce had a maternal uncle called Wu Jing, who had been governor of Danyang (today's Xuancheng in Anhui) in Jiangdong, but was forced out by Liu You, the governor of the region of Yangzhou. Sun Ce asked Yuan Shu's permission to go to Jiangdong to help his uncle fight Liu You. Yuan Shu agreed to assign one thousand soldiers to Sun Ce, but only because he had a personal grudge against Liu You.

As Sun Ce moved south with his troops, many people along the way offered their services to him. By the time they reached Liyang (today's He County in Anhui), their ranks had swelled to more than five thousand. Sun Ce's force was further

安徽和县）兵力扩充到五六千人。孙策有个从小就很亲密的朋友周瑜，也带了人马来会合，孙策的力量就壮大了。

孙策作战骁勇，再加上他的军队纪律严明，得到百姓的支持。因此，很快就渡过了江，不但打败了刘繇的人马，夺回丹阳，还攻下了吴郡和会稽郡。这样，江东六个郡的大片土地，都被孙策占领了。

孙策占据了江东，还雄心勃勃地想向北发展。他趁曹操和袁绍在官渡相持不下的时候，准备偷袭许都，把汉献帝抓在自己手里。正在调兵遣将，准备粮草的时候，想不到出了一件意外的事。

原来，孙策攻下吴郡的时候，杀了那里的太守许贡。许贡手下的门客跟孙策结下了仇。有一次，趁孙策上山打猎的时候，他们埋伏在树林里，放了一支暗箭，射中了孙策的面颊。

孙策受了重伤，请医生治疗也没有用，病势越来越重。孙策自己知道不行了，就把部下张昭等找来嘱咐，说：“现在我们这里已经有了人马地盘，可以跟人家较量一番，希望你们好好辅助我弟弟。”

孙权那时才十九岁。他年纪虽然轻，但是平时喜欢结交朋友，注重人才，在江东官员中，已经很有声誉。孙策把印

augmented by the men brought in by Zhou Yu, a close friend of his since childhood.

Sun Ce's bravery in battle, his martial skills and the iron discipline he imposed on his troops earned him a lot of popular support. This enabled him to bring his troops across the river in good time not only to defeat Liu You's forces and recover Danyang, but also to capture the Wu and Guiji Commanderies. As a result of this action, Sun Ce succeeded in taking control of a vast area covering six commanderies in Jiangdong.

After gaining control of Jiangdong, the ambitious Sun Ce began a northward expansion. As Cao Cao and Yuan Shao were locked in a stand-off at Guandu, he began planning a sneak attack on Xudu to take Emperor Xian under his wing. When troop deployments and logistical preparations for the operation were under way, however, something unexpected happened.

It all began with Sun Ce's killing of Xu Gong, the governor of the Wu Commandery. The incident had earned Sun Ce the enmity of Xu Gong's retainers, who ambushed Sun Ce's hunting party in a heavily forested hill. Sun Ce was shot in the face by an arrow from one of the ambushers.

The wound proved serious and got worse despite treatment. Knowing he would not survive much longer, Sun Ce called together a few close associates, including Zhang Zhao, and made a final request. "I have built up a power base here with enough people and territory to compete with my rivals. Please help my younger brother to take over from me."

Sun Quan was only 19 at the time, but already enjoyed great prestige among the officials in Jiangdong because of his natural inclination for cultivating friends, as well as the

授交给孙权，叫他佩带起来，说：“咱们兄弟俩，要论上阵打仗的本领，你不如我，至于选拔人才，任用贤人，我比不上你。希望以后你好好保住江东这份基业。”说着，就咽了气。

孙权倒在床前哭个没完，张昭劝住了他，叫他立刻换上官服，骑着马到军营里去巡视一遍，一面赶快派人通知当时驻扎在巴丘（在今湖南岳阳）的周瑜。周瑜连夜带兵回到吴中，跟张昭两人一起辅助孙权。

那时候，江东六郡虽说都被孙策占了，但是还有不少偏僻的地方，不服他们指挥。有一些人还要看看风向再说。亏得张昭、周瑜两人一心一意帮助孙权，才把局面稳定下来。

孙权记住他哥哥的话，用心搜罗人才。周瑜对孙权说：“我有个好友鲁肃，是个很有见识的人，请他来帮助将军，准没有错。”

孙权派人把鲁肃请了来，两个人一见面，就谈得挺对劲儿。有一次，孙权会见宾客，等别人走完了，把鲁肃单独留下来谈心。

premium he put on talents. Sun Ce handed his tasseled seal to Sun Quan and made him put it on. "My brother!" He said to him, "On the battlefield you are no match for me, but in the ability to recognize and make good use of talented people I cannot hold a candle to you. Make sure you carry on what we've accomplished in Jiangdong." With those last words he breathed his last breath.

Sun Quan's long lament at Sun Ce's deathbed was interrupted by Zhang Zhao, who made him change immediately into official attire and ride through the barracks on an inspection tour in order to keep up the soldiers' morale. In the meantime, a messenger was dispatched with the latest news to Zhou Yu, who was camping in Baqiu (today's Yueyang in Hunan). That night, Zhou Yu returned with his troops to the Wuzhong area and, together with Zhang Zhao, provided Sun Quan with all the support he needed.

Although Sun Ce had by that time taken control of all six commanderies of Jiangdong, there were still pockets of resistance in many remote areas. However, thanks to the devotion and help of Zhang Zhao and Zhou Yu, Sun Quan was finally able to cement his control.

Sun Quan took to heart his brother's last words and left no stone unturned in his quest for talented people to help his cause. Zhou Yu said to Sun Quan, "I have a friend called Lu Su, who is a knowledgeable and perceptive person. If you enlist his services, you will never regret it."

At Sun Quan's invitation, Lu Su arrived the two men soon hit it off. On one occasion, Sun Quan asked Lu Su to stay after the other guests had left in order that they might talk in private.

孙权说：“现在汉室衰落，天下扰乱。我想继承父兄的事业，像齐桓公、晋文公一样，来扶助天子，建立霸业，您看怎么样？”

鲁肃说：“我仔细研究过天下大势。汉室已经不能再兴盛起来了。曹操势力已经强大，也除不了他。我替将军打算，还是保住江东这块地方，等待时机。曹操现在正忙着对付北方，顾不到我们这一头。我们可以趁这个机会，讨伐刘表，占领荆州，然后再来平定天下。这倒是汉高祖的事业呢！”

孙权听了这番话，心里豁然开朗。

由于孙权重用人才，江东地方，文臣武将，人才济济，出现了一片兴旺景象。

曹操听到孙权接替孙策的地位，为了笼络孙权，就用朝廷名义，封孙权为征虏将军，兼会稽太守。从此以后，孙权实际上在江东建立了割据的政权。

"The Han dynasty is in decline and anarchy reigns in the country," Sun Quan began. "I want to carry on fighting for the cause my brother and my father fought for. I want to emulate the ancient Duke Huan of Qi and Duke Wen of Jin and help the emperor to project imperial power far and wide. What do you think?"

"I've carefully studied the situation in this country and have come to believe that it is no longer possible for the Han dynasty to return to its former glories." Lu Su replied. "Cao Cao has grown too powerful to be easily eliminated. I believe it is in your interest for the moment to consolidate your hold on Jiangdong and bide your time. Cao Cao is at the moment too busy dealing with enemies in the north to pay any notice to us. This is an opportunity to attack Liu Biao and capture Jingzhou. The conquest of the whole country will come later. It's a worthy cause that brings to mind Emperor Gao of the Han dynasty."

Sun Quan's spirit was lifted and his heart warmed by this analysis. Thanks to Sun Quan's ability to recognize and value talent, Jiangdong thrived under a meritocracy of numerous outstanding civil officials and military officers.

In order to court the support of Sun Quan, Cao Cao had the imperial court name him Zheng Lu ("the vanquisher of barbarians") General with double duty as the governor of Guiji. From then on, Sun Quan solidified his position as head of a de facto separate regime.

7、刘备三顾茅庐

官渡大战以后，刘备逃到荆州，投奔刘表。刘表拨给他一些人马，让他驻在新野（今河南新野县）。

刘备在荆州住了几年，刘表一直把他当上等宾客来招待。但是刘备是一个雄心勃勃的人，因为自己的抱负没有能够实现，心里总是闷闷不乐。

有一次，他摸摸自己的大腿，心里有了感触，流下了眼泪。刘表发现了，就问他遇到什么不快活的事。刘备说：“没什么！以前我经常打仗，每天不离开马鞍，大腿上的肉很结实。现在在这儿过着清闲生活，大腿的肉又长肥了。看看日子像流水般地过去，人都快老了，还干不了什么大事业，想起来就感到难过。”

刘表安慰了他一阵。但是刘备心里总在考虑着长远的打算。为了这个，他想寻找个好助手。

他打听到襄阳地方有个名士叫司马徽，就特地去拜访。司马徽很客气地接待他，问他的来意。

刘备说：“不瞒先生说，我是专诚来向您请教天下大势的。”

7. Liu Bei's Three Visits to the Thatched Hut

After the battle of Guandu, Liu Bei fled to the region of Jingzhou for Liu Biao's protection. Liu Biao assigned some troops to him and then sent him to Xinye (today's Xinye County in Henan).

Liu Bei spent several years in Jingzhou. Despite the special treatment accorded him by Liu Biao, the ambitious Liu Bei never stopped fretting about his failure to accomplish what he had set out to do.

On one occasion he was overcome with emotion and was unable to hold back his tears. When asked by Liu Biao what was bothering him, Liu Bei replied, "I used to have powerful muscles in my legs because I was always riding in battle, but the sedentary life I now lead has added flab to my thighs. I am saddened to realize that as time flies and as I age I haven't accomplished much in life."

Liu Biao offered some soothing words, but Liu Bei could not take his mind from his plans for the future. He soon decided that he needed a good adviser.

As soon as he learned that a man of renown and learning called Sima Hui resided in Xiangyang, he paid him a personal visit. Sima Hui received him courteously and asked about the purpose of the visit.

"As a matter of fact I have come expressly to hear your

司马徽听了，呵呵大笑起来，说：“像我这样平凡的人，懂得什么天下大势。要谈天下大势，得靠有才能的俊杰。”

刘备央求他指点说：“往哪里去找这样的俊杰呢？”

司马徽说：“这一带有卧龙，还有凤雏（音chú），您能请到其中一位，就可以平定天下了。”

刘备急着问卧龙、凤雏是谁，司马徽告诉他：卧龙名叫诸葛亮，字孔明，凤雏名叫庞统，字士元。

刘备向司马徽道了谢，回到新野。正好有一个读书人来见他。刘备一看他举止大方，以为他不是卧龙，就是凤雏，热情地接待了他。

经过一番谈话，才知道这个人名叫徐庶，也是当地一位名士，因为听到刘备正在招请人才，特地来投奔他。

刘备很高兴，就把徐庶留在部下当谋士。

徐庶说：“我有个老朋友诸葛孔明，人们称他卧龙，将军是不是愿意见见他呢？”

analysis of the political situation in this country." Liu Bei said.

This triggered a burst of laughter from Sima Hui. "What is a very ordinary person like me to know about the state of the country? To achieve dominion of the country you need a toprnotch mind and talents of the highest calibre."

Liu Bei begged Sima Hui to point him to such persons. "Where can I find the kind of talent you are referring to?"

"We have in this vicinity a Wolong (crouching dragon) and a Fengchu (fledgling phoenix). Either of them could help you gain control of the country." Sima Hui replied.

Liu Bei could not wait to know who this Wolong and Fengchu were. Sima Hui told him that the Wolong went by the name of Zhuge Liang, also known by the courtesy name of Kongming; the Fengchu was called Pang Tong, with the courtesy name of Shiyuan.

Liu Bei thanked Sima Hui and returned to Xinye, where a scholar came to visit him. The visitor's air of self-assurance and composure prompted Liu Bei to conclude that he must be either the Wolong or the Fengchu. The caller was therefore warmly received.

Some time into the conversation it was learned that the visitor's name was Xu Shu. He was a local intellectual and had come to offer his services to Liu Bei after learning that the latter was recruiting talented men.

Liu Bei gladly took him in as an adviser.

"I have an old friend called Zhuge Kongming, popularly known as the Wolong. Are you willing to meet with him?" Xu Shu asked.

刘备从徐庶那里知道了诸葛亮的情况。原来诸葛亮不是本地人，他的老家在琅琊郡阳都县（今山东沂水县南）。他少年的时候，父亲死了。他叔父诸葛玄跟刘表是朋友，就带着他到荆州来。不久，他叔父也死了，他就在隆中（今湖北襄阳西）定居下来，搭个茅屋，一面耕地种庄稼，一面读书。那时，他年纪只有二十七岁，但是学问渊博，见识丰富，朋友们都很钦佩他，他也常常把自己比作古时候的管仲、乐毅。但是他看到天下乱纷纷，当地的刘表也不是能用人才的人，所以他宁愿隐居在隆中，过着他恬淡的生活。

刘备听了徐庶的介绍，说：“既然您跟他这样熟悉，就请您辛苦一趟，把他请来吧！”

徐庶摇摇头说：“这可不行。像这样的人，一定得将军亲自去请他，才能表示您的诚意。”

刘备先后听到司马徽、徐庶这样推重诸葛亮，知道诸葛亮一定是个了不起的人才，就带着关羽、张飞，一起到隆中去找诸葛亮。

诸葛亮得知刘备要来拜访他，故意躲开。刘备到了那里，扑了个空。

跟刘备一起去的关羽、张飞都感到不耐烦。但是刘备却

From Xu Shu, Liu Bei found out details about Zhuge Liang's life. It turned out Zhuge Liang was not a native of that part of the country, but had come from Yangdu County (south of today's Yishui County in Shandong) of the Langya Commandery. His father had died when he was in his teens. His uncle Zhuge Xuan, who was a friend of Liu Biao, had decided to bring him to Jingzhou. Shortly after this, his uncle had also died. He settled down in a thatched hut in Longzhong (west of today's Xiangyang in Hubei), and spent his days farming and reading. He was then only 27 but was already admired by his friends for the breadth and depth of his learning and knowledge. He liked to compare himself to the legendary Guan Zhong and Yue Yi. Put off by the chaos in the country and realizing Liu Biao's inability to recognize and tap talent, he chose to lead the simple life of a recluse in Longzhong.

After hearing Xu Shu's account, Liu Bei said, "Since you know him so well, why don't you persuade him to come to me?"

Xu Shu shook his head. "That won't do. To get a person of his caliber, you must show your sincerity by going to him in person."

Having heard nothing but high praise for Zhuge Liang from both Sima Hui and Xu Shu, Liu Bei was convinced that Zhuge Liang must be greatly talented. He took Guan Yu and Zhang Fei with him to pay a visit to Zhuge Liang in Longzhong.

Informed of Liu Bei's impending visit, Zhuge Liang deliberately stayed away so that when Liu Bei arrived, he was greeted by an empty house.

Guan Yu and Zhang Fei, who accompanied Liu Bei on the visit, were much annoyed by the snub, but Liu Bei took Xu Shu's remark to heart and went back a second time, only for

记住徐庶的话，耐着性子去请，一次见不到，第二次再去，两次不见，第三次又去请他。

诸葛亮终于被刘备的诚意感动了，就在自己的草屋里接待刘备。

刘备把关羽、张飞留在外面，自己跟着诸葛亮进了屋子。趁屋里没有人的时候，刘备坦率地说：“如今汉室衰落，大权落在奸臣手里，我自己知道能力差，却很想挽回这个局面，只是想不出好办法。所以特地来请先生指点。”

诸葛亮看到刘备这样虚心请教，也就推心置腹地跟刘备谈了自己的主张。他说：“现在曹操已经战胜袁绍，拥有一百万兵力，而且他又挟持天子发号施令，这就不能光凭武力和他争胜负了。孙权占据江东一带，已经三代，江东地势险要，现在百姓归附他，还有一批有才能的人为他效力。看来，也只能和他联合，不能打他的主意。”

接着，诸葛亮分析了荆州和益州（今四川、云南和陕西、甘肃、湖北、贵州的一部）的形势，认为荆州是一个军事要地，可是刘表是守不住这块地方的。益州土地肥沃广阔，向来称为“天府之国”，可是那里的主人刘璋也是个懦弱无能的人，大家都对他不满意。

the same thing to happen again. Undeterred, he went back a third time, determined to obtain the services of Zhuge Liang.

Liu Bei's sincerity finally won over Zhuge Liang, who received Liu Bei in his humble thatched hut.

Liu Bei entered the hut to meet Zhuge Liang, leaving Guan Yu and Zhang Fei waiting outside. Once alone with Zhuge Liang inside the hut, Liu Bei got straight to the point. "The Han dynasty is in deep decline and power has now fallen into evil hands. I want to try to reverse the situation, only I don't have a good strategy. That's why I have come to you for enlightenment."

Moved by Liu Bei's humility in seeking his advice, Zhuge Liang made an expose of his views, holding nothing back. "Cao Cao has defeated Yuan Shao and has one million troops under his command. He can issue commands in the name of the emperor, who Cao Cao is simply using as a pawn. Under the circumstances, you cannot expect to use force alone to compete with him. Sun Quan has ruled Jiangdong for three generations. He possesses the advantages of the forbidding terrain of Jiangdong, popular support and a large pool of talent to draw from. In my opinion, you should pursue an alliance with him instead of treating him as your next conquest."

Zhuce Liang went on to give an analysis of the situation in Jingzhou and Yizhou (covering parts of today's Sichuan, Yunnan, Shaanxi, Gansu, Hubei and Guizhou). According to him, Jingzhou was strategically important but Liu Biao would not be able to hold it for long. Yizhou boasted vast, fertile land and had for that reason long been known as a "Heavenly Country", but it was ruled by Liu Zhang, who was another weak and incompetent leader who was unpopular with his subjects.

最后，他说：“将军是皇室的后代，天下闻名，如果您能占领荆、益两州的地方，对外联合孙权，对内整顿内政，一旦有机会，就可以从荆州、益州两路进军，攻击曹操。到那时，有谁不欢迎将军呢。能够这样，功业就可以成就，汉室也可以恢复了。”

刘备说：“先生的话真是开了我的窍，我一定照您的意见干。现在就请您一起下山吧。”

诸葛亮看到刘备这样热情诚恳，也就高高兴兴跟着刘备到新野去了。后来，人们把这件事称作“三顾茅庐”，把诸葛亮这番谈话称作“隆中对”。

打那以后，刘备把诸葛亮当老师对待，诸葛亮也把刘备当作自己的主人，两人越来越亲密。

关羽和张飞看在眼里，心里很不高兴，背后直嘀咕。他们认为诸葛亮年纪轻轻，未必有多大能耐，怪刘备把他看得太高了。

刘备向他们解释说：“我有了孔明先生，就像鱼得到水一样。以后可不许你们乱发议论。”关羽、张飞听了刘备的话，才没有话说。

"Honorable general, you are descended from Han royalty and well known across the country. If you succeed in taking control of Jingzhou and Yizhou, enter into an alliance with Sun Quan and ensure good government in areas under your control, then when the time comes you will be able to launch a two-pronged attack on Cao Cao from Jingzhou and Yizhou. You will be greeted with open arms by the people wherever your campaign takes you. When that happens, your vision will be realized and the Han dynasty will be revitalized."

"You have opened my mind," Liu Bei replied. "I will certainly follow your advice. I implore you to come down the mountain with me."

Liu Bei's enthusiasm and sincerity won over Zhuge Liang, who gladly followed Liu Bei to Xinye. This episode is historically known as the "Three Visits to the Thatched Hut" and Zhuge Liang's discourse as the "Longzhong Dialogue."

From then on, Liu Bei treated Zhuge Liang as his mentor and Zhuge Liang treated Liu Bei as his master, and their bond grew steadily stronger.

Guan Yu and Zhang Fei were very unhappy with this development and began to express private misgivings. In their estimation, Zhuge Liang was too young to have any major capabilities and they thought that Liu Bei overestimated his abilities.

Liu Bei admonished them for these feelings. "With Mister Kongming as my adviser I now feel like a stranded fish returned to water. I don't want to hear any of this nonsense from you in the future." This silenced Guan Yu and Zhang Fei, and the matter was laid to rest.

8、周瑜火攻赤壁

曹操平定北方以后，公元208年，率领大军南下，进攻刘表。他的人马还没有到荆州，刘表已经病死。他的儿子刘琮听到曹军声势浩大，吓破了胆，先派人求降了。

这时候，刘备在樊城（今湖北襄樊市）驻守。他听到曹操大军南下，决定把人马撤退到江陵（今湖北江陵）。荆州的百姓听说刘备待人好，都宁愿跟着他一块撤退。

曹操赶到襄阳，听说刘备向江陵撤退，又打听到刘表在江陵积了大批军粮，怕被刘备占去，亲自率领五千轻骑兵追赶刘备。刘备的人马带了兵器、装备，还有十几万百姓跟着他，每天只能行军十几里。曹操的骑兵一天一夜就赶了三百多里，很快就在当阳长坂坡（今湖北当阳县东北）追上了刘备。

刘备的人马，被曹操的骑兵冲杀得七零八落，还亏得张

8. Zhou Yu's Fiery Attack at Red Cliffs

After pacifying the north, Cao Cao led a large force in 208 AD to attack Liu Biao in the south. Yest before the Cao army had even reached Jingzhou, Liu Biao died of illness. His son Liu Cong, petrified at the scale of the attacking force, sent an envoy to negotiate a surrender.

When Liu Bei, who was camped in Fancheng (today's Xiangfan City in Hubei), heard about the southward push of Cao Cao's army, he decided to pull his troops back to Jiangling (today's Jiangling in Hubei). The populace in Jingzhou decided to leave their land to follow Liu Bei because they had heard about his legendary generosity.

When Cao Cao arrived with his troops in Xiangyang, he learned that Liu Bei had withdrawn to Jiangling, where Liu Biao had reportedly stockpiled large quantities of grains and weapons. Concerned that these might fall into Liu Bei's hands, he personally led a light cavalry of five thousand troops to head him off. Loaded down with weapons, supplies and over a hundred thousand civilians who had chosen to him, Liu Bei's troops could advance only a dozen *li* a day, whereas Cao Cao's cavalry covered three hundred *li* in a single day and soon caught up with them at Changban Hills in Dangyang (northeast of today's Dangyang County in Hubei).

Liu Bei's army was soon routed by Cao Cao's cavalry. It

飞在长坂坡抵挡了一阵，刘备、诸葛亮才带着少数人马摆脱追兵。但是往江陵的路已经被曹军截断，只好改道退到夏口（今湖北武汉市）。

曹操占领了江陵，继续沿江向东进军，很快就要到夏口了。诸葛亮对刘备说：“形势紧急，我们只有向孙权求救一条路了。”

正好孙权怕荆州被曹操占领，派鲁肃来找刘备，劝说他 and 孙权联合抵抗曹军。诸葛亮就跟鲁肃一起到柴桑（今江西九江西南）去见孙权。

诸葛亮见了孙权，说：“现在曹操攻下了荆州，马上就要进攻东吴了。将军如果决心抵抗，就趁早同曹操断绝关系，跟我们一起抵抗；要不然，干脆向他们投降。如果再犹豫不决，祸到临头就来不及了。”

孙权反问说：“那么，刘将军为什么不投降曹操呢？”

诸葛亮严肃地说：“刘将军是皇室后代，才能盖世，怎么肯低三下四去投降曹操呢？”

孙权听诸葛亮这么一说，也激动地说：“我也不能拿江东

was only Zhang Fei's rearguard action holding back the enemy for a while that enabled Liu Bei and Zhuge Liang, escorted by a small remnant force, to shake off their pursuers. However, by that time the road to Jiangling had been cut off by the Cao army and they were compelled to head instead to Xiakou (today's Wuhan City in Hubei).

Having captured Jiangling, Cao Cao's forces continued their march along the river toward the east. They were approaching Xiakou when Zhuge Liang said to Liu Bei, "We are in deep trouble. We have no choice but to seek help from Sun Quan."

It so happened that, worried by the prospect of Cao Cao's capture of Jingzhou, Sun Quan had sent Lu Su to lobby Liu Bei for an alliance against the Cao offensive. Zhuge Liang returned with Lu Su to meet with Sun Quan in Chaisang (southwest of today's Jiujiang in Jiangxi).

Zhuce Liang said to Sun Quan, "When Cao Cao takes Jingzhou, his next target will be the state of Wu in Jiangdong. If you are determined to put up a fight, you should sever your ties with Cao Cao now and join forces with us. The alternative is clearly to surrender to him. If you procrastinate, disaster will strike and it will be too late."

"Why doesn't General Liu surrender to Cao Cao?" Sun Quan retorted.

"General Liu is descended from the Han royalty and possesses superior abilities. He will never consent to debase himself by surrendering to Cao Cao." Zhuge Liang replied.

At these words Sun Quan became worked up. "I will not surrender Jiangdong and my hundred thousand troops either.

土地和十万人马白白地送人。不过刘将军刚打了败仗，怎么还能抵抗曹军呢？”

诸葛亮说：“您放心吧，刘将军虽然败了一阵，但是还有水军二万。曹操兵马虽然多，远道追来，兵士也已经筋疲力尽。再说，北方人不习惯水战，荆州的人对他们不服。只要我们协力同心，一定能够打败曹军。”

孙权听了诸葛亮的一番分析，心里挺高兴，就立刻召集部下将领，讨论抵抗曹操的办法。

正在这时候，曹操派兵士下战书来了。那信上说：“我奉大汉皇帝的命令，领兵南征。现在我准备了水军八十万，愿意和将军较量一番。”

孙权把这封信递给部下看，大伙儿看了都刷地变了脸色，说不出话来。

张昭是东吴官员中资格最老的。他说：“曹操用天子的名义来征讨，我们要抵抗他，道理上输了一着。再说，我们本来想靠长江天险，现在也靠不住了。曹军占领了荆州，又有上千艘战船，他们水陆两路一起下来，我们怎么也抵挡不了，我看只好投降。”

张昭这一说，马上有不少人附和。只有鲁肃在旁边冷眼旁观，一声不吭。

But how will General Liu be able to defend himself against Cao's after his recent defeat?"

"Don't worry! Despite having lost one battle, General Liu still has twenty thousand navy men." Zhuge Liang reassured him. "Cao Cao may have a large force, but the long marches have tired his soldiers out. What's more, these northerners are not accustomed to naval battles and they face the hostility of the people of Jingzhou. If we are united, we will be able to defeat the Cao army."

Buoyed by Zhuge Liang's analysis Sun Quan immediately summoned his generals to draw up a plan of resistance against Cao Cao's imminent attack.

In the meantime, a messenger had been sent by Cao Cao to deliver a letter of challenge, which read, "On the orders of the emperor of the Han dynasty, I am leading an expeditionary force on a southern campaign. I am challenging you to a battle against my 800,000-strong naval force."

Sun Quan showed the letter to his staff, all of whom suddenly became pale-faced and speechless.

Then Zhang Zhao, the most senior member of the Wu hierarchy, spoke. "Cao Cao is now campaigning in the name of the emperor. If we resist, it's already one strike against us as far as legitimacy is concerned. Besides, we used to have the natural barrier of the Yangtze on our side but we've lost that now. With Cao Cao's capture of Jingzhou and his armada of over a thousand battleships, we have no hope of resisting a joint land and naval attack. In my view, we have no alternative but to surrender."

His view was immediately echoed by others. Only Lu Su looked on dispassionately without uttering a word.

孙权听着听着，觉得不是滋味，就走出屋子，鲁肃也跟着出来。

孙权问鲁肃：“你说说，该怎么办呢？”

鲁肃说：“刚才张昭他们说的话全听不得。要说投降，我鲁肃可以投降，将军就不可以。因为我投降了，大不了回老家去，照样跟名士们交往，有机会还可以当个州郡官员。将军如果投降，那么江东六郡全都落在曹操手里，您上哪儿去？”

孙权叹了口气说：“刚刚大家说的，真叫我失望。只有你说的才合我的心意。”

散会以后，鲁肃劝孙权赶快把正在鄱阳的大将周瑜召回来商量。

周瑜一到柴桑，孙权又召集文武官员讨论。周瑜在会上慷慨激昂地说：“曹操名为汉朝丞相，其实是汉室奸贼。这次他自己来送死，哪有投降他的道理。”他给大家分析了曹操许多不利条件，认为北方兵士不会水战，而且老远赶到这陌生地方，水土不服，一定会生病。兵马再多，也没有用。

孙权听了周瑜的话，胆也壮了。他站起来拔出宝剑，“豁”

Sun Quan did not like what he was seeing and hearing, so he walked out, followed by Lu Su.

"Tell me what we should do," Sun Quan asked Lu Su.

"Zhang Zhao and the others don't know what they are talking about. Ignore them!" Lu Su replied. "It may be all right for me to surrender, but it is not for you. If I surrendered, I would at the worst go back to my hometown and renew my ties with scholars and intellectuals. I might even be able to get an official commission in the regional or commandery government. But if you, my esteemed general, surrendered, all six commanderies of Jiangdong would fall into Cao Cao's lap, and where would you go then?"

"I was really disappointed by what the others were saying just now. You alone have said what was on my mind," Sun Quan said with a sigh.

After the meeting, Lu Su urged Sun Quan to call General Zhou Yu back from Poyang without delay for consultation.

When Zhou Yu arrived in Chaisang, Sun Quan called another meeting of high officials. Zhou Yu made a passionate speech at the meeting. "Cao Cao is the Counselor-in-chief of the Han court in name, but in reality he is a traitor. He has now offered himself up to be killed, so why in the world should we surrender to him?" He went on to enumerate many disadvantages and handicaps Cao Cao had to contend with. His soldiers were northerners unaccustomed to naval warfare, and their long trek to an unfamiliar land almost guaranteed that they would suffer from stomach troubles. When that happened his natural advantages would evaporate.

Sun Quan, his nerves steeled by the reassuring words of

的一声，把案几砍去一角。他严厉地说：“谁要再提投降曹操，就跟这案桌一样。”

当天晚上，周瑜又单独去找孙权，说：“我已经打听清楚，曹操兵马号称八十万，这是虚张声势，其实只不过二十几万，其中还有不少是荆州兵士，不一定真心替他打仗。您只要给我五万精兵，我保管把他打败。”

第二天，孙权任命周瑜为都督，拨给他三万水军，叫他同刘备协力抵抗曹操。

周瑜领兵进军，在赤壁（今湖北武昌县西赤矶山）和曹军前哨碰上了。果然不出周瑜所料，曹军兵士很多人不服水土，已经得了疫病。双方一交锋，曹军就打了败仗，被迫撤退到长江的北岸。周瑜率领水军进驻南岸，和曹军隔江遥遥相对。

正像周瑜预料的那样，曹操的北方来的兵士不会水战，他们在战船上，遇到风浪颠簸就受不了。后来，他们把战船用铁索拴在一起，船果然平稳不少。

周瑜的部将黄盖看到这个情况，向周瑜献个计策，说：

Zhou Yu, got to his feet with his sword unsheathed, and with it he whittled off a corner of the table. "Whoever mentions surrender again will end up like this table." He declared.

That evening, Zhou Yu went to Sun Quan again for a private meeting. "I've found out that Cao Cao was just bluffing when he claimed to have 800,000 troops." He said. "The actual figure is more like 200,000, many of whom are from Jingzhou and therefore of questionable loyalty. Just give me fifty thousand of your best troops and I assure you I will defeat him."

The next day, Sun Quan made Zhou Yu commander-in-chief of 30,000 naval troops, with instructions to coordinate his actions with Liu Bei in a joint effort to resist Cao Cao's offensive.

Zhou Yu's troops ran into Cao Cao's forward sentinels at Red Cliffs (Chiji Mountains west of today's Wuchang County in Hubei). As predicted by Zhou Yu, many in the Cao army had been struck down with diarrhea. In the first skirmish the Cao troops were beaten back and had to withdraw to the north bank of the Yangtze. Zhou Yu and his naval force moored on the south bank opposite the Cao force.

Also as predicted by Zhou Yu, the northerners in the Cao force were ill-adapted to naval operations and got seasick whenever their battleships were buffeted by wind or waves. They decided to tie the ships together with steel cables to stabilize the river craft.

When Zhou Yu's staff officer Huang Gai saw what the enemy had done with the steel cables, he had an idea. "We are outnumbered by the enemy and it's not in our interest to prolong the stand-off. Now that the Cao army have tied their

“敌人兵多，我们兵少，拖下去对我们不利。现在曹军把战船都连接在一起，我看可以用火攻的办法来打败他们。”

周瑜觉得黄盖的主意好，两人还商量好，让黄盖派人送了一封信给曹操，表示要脱离东吴，投降曹操。曹操以为东吴将领害怕他，对黄盖的假投降，一点也没怀疑。

黄盖叫兵士偷偷地准备好十艘大船，每艘船上都装着枯枝，浇足了油，外面裹着布幕，插着旗帜，另外又准备一批轻快的小船，拴在大船船尾上，准备在大船起火时转移。

隆冬的十一月，天气突然回暖，刮起了东南风。当天晚上，黄盖带领一批兵士分乘十条大船，驶在前面，后面跟随着一批船只。船队到了江心，扯满了风帆，像箭一样驶向江北。

曹军水寨的将士听说东吴的大将来投降，正纷纷挤到船头看热闹。没想到东吴船队离北岸约摸二里光景，前面十条大船突然同时起火。火借风势，风助火威。十条火船，好比十条火龙一样，闯进曹军水寨。那里的船舰，都挤在一起，又躲

ships together, I think we might be able to defeat them by attacking with fire."

Huang Gai's idea sounded ingenious to Zhou Yu. The two formed a plan whereby Huang Gai would send word to Cao Cao stating his intention to abandon the state of Wu of Jiangdong and defect to Cao Cao's side. Convinced that the generals of the state of Wu were in awe of him, Cao Cao never had the slightest suspicion about the authenticity of Huang Gai's professed intention to defect.

In the meantime, Huang Gai had instructed his soldiers to load ten big vessels with dry twigs generously sprinkled with kerosene. The boats were then shrouded with sailcloth and adorned with numerous flags and standards. Smaller, lighter craft were tethered to the stern of the bigger boats to be used as getaways once the fire was started.

The November weather was abnormally warm, and a southeasterly wind began to blow. At nightfall, Huang Gai and some of his troops sailed in the ten big boats followed by the smaller craft, and when the flotilla reached midstream the sails were unfurled and the boats began to race toward the north bank.

Cao Cao's naval troops had heard about the imminent surrender of an enemy general and were crowded near the prows of their ships to gawk. When the flotilla of the Wu came within two *li* of the north bank, the ten big boats suddenly burst into flames. With the rising wind fanning the flames, the ten fiery boats rammed into the Cao troops' naval headquarters like ten fire-breathing dragons. The battleships moored there, having been tied together, could not break free and the blaze jumped

不开，很快地都蔓延起来。一眨眼工夫，已经烧成一片火海。水寨烧了不算，岸上的营寨也着了火，曹军一大批兵士被烧死了，还有不少人被挤到江里，不会泅水的，马上淹死了。

周瑜一看北岸起火，马上带领精兵渡江进攻。他们把战鼓擂得震天响。北岸的曹军不知道后面有多少人马进攻，吓得全部崩溃。

曹操拖着残兵败将向华容（今湖北潜江县西南）的小路上逃跑。那条小路全是水洼泥坑，骑兵没法通过。曹操赶忙命令老弱兵士找了一些稻草铺路。他带着骑兵好不容易才通过，可是那些填铺稻草的兵士，却被人马踩死了不少。

刘备和周瑜一起，分水陆两路紧紧追赶，一直追到南郡（治所在今湖北江陵），曹操的几十万大军战死的加上得疫病死的，损失了一大半。曹操只好派部将曹仁、徐晃、乐进分别留守江陵和襄阳，自己带兵回到北方去了。

经过这场赤壁大战，三国分立的局面已经基本形成。

from ship to ship, soon engulfing everything. Not only were the naval headquarters reduced to ashes, but the tents on the shore had also caught fire. Many soldiers were burned to death and many others who did not know how to swim drowned when they were jostled into the river.

When Zhou Yu saw the blaze on the north bank, he immediately crossed the river with his elite troops to press the attack. They made a sustained, loud racket on their war drums as they moved forward, confusing the Cao army into thinking that they were confronted by a large force. The panicked Cao army was quickly routed.

Cao Cao fled with his remnant troops toward Huarong (southwest of today's Qianjiang County in Hubei). They took a muddy back road full that proved difficult for his cavalry to traverse. Cao Cao ordered the older and weaker soldiers to lay straw on the road to improve the surface. This enabled Cao Cao and his cavalymen to finally ride ahead, but many of the soldiers covering the road with straw were trampled to death in the process.

Liu Bei and Zhou Yu relentlessly pursued Cao Cao's remnant forces on land and on the river until they came to the Nan Commandery (at today's Jiangling in Hubei), where Cao Cao found more than half of his hundreds of thousands of troops had either died in battle or of disease. Cao Cao entrusted the garrisons of Jiangling and Xiangyang to his generals Cao Ren, Xu Huang and Yue Jin, and then returned with his troops to the north.

The Battle of Red Cliffs was an early milestone in the division of the country into three separate kingdoms.

9、关羽水淹七军

赤壁之战以后不久，周瑜病死了，鲁肃劝说孙权把荆州借给了刘备。

公元214年，刘备进军成都，自称益州牧。

东吴孙权知道刘备占领了益州以后，派人向他讨还荆州，刘备不同意。双方为了荆州几乎闹翻。后来听说曹操要进攻汉中，益州也受到威胁。刘备和孙权双方都感到曹操是他们强大的敌手，就讲和了，把荆州分为两部分，以湘水为界，湘水以西归刘备，湘水以东归东吴。

刘备安下了荆州那一头，就专心对付曹操，请诸葛亮坐镇成都，亲自率领大军向汉中进行，叫法正当随军谋士。

曹操听到刘备出兵，马上组织兵力，和刘备对抗。曹操也亲自到长安去指挥汉中战事。双方相持了一年。到了第二

9. Guan Yu Swamps the Seven Armies

Not long after the Battle of Red Cliffs, Zhou Yu died of illness. At Lu Su's suggestion, Sun Quan ceded control of Jingzhou temporarily to Liu Bei.

In 214 AD, Liu Bei marched into Chengdu and declared himself governor of Yizhou.

When Sun Quan learned that Liu Bei had seized Yizhou, he demanded the return of Jingzhou, but Liu Bei refused. The two nearly had a falling-out over this issue. When Cao Cao was preparing for to attack Hanzhong, thus also threatening Yizhou, Liu Bei and Sun Quan realized that Cao Cao was a formidable foe to both of them. They decided to make up with each other and agreed that the part of Jingzhou west of the Xiang River would go to Liu Bei and the eastern part would revert to the state of Wu.

With the question of Jingzhou out of the way, Liu Bei could devote his attention to dealing with Cao Cao. He left Zhuge Liang in charge of defending Chengdu and marched at the head of a large force toward Hanzhong, taking his adviser Fa Zheng along with him.

In response, Cao Cao readied his troops for battle against Liu Bei. He went to Chang'an to personally direct the campaign in Hanzhong. The stand-off lasted a year until in a battle at Yangping Pass the army of the state of Shu (Liu Bei) finally

年，在阳平关一次战役中，蜀军大胜，魏军的主将夏侯渊被杀。曹操不得不退出汉中，把魏军撤退到长安。

这么一来，刘备在益州的地位更加巩固了。公元219年，刘备在他手下一批文武官员拥戴下，自立为汉中王。

按照诸葛亮早已设计的战略，是打算从两路进攻曹操的。这一次西面的汉中打了胜仗，就得乘这个势头，再从东面的荆州直接攻打中原。

镇守荆州的是大将关羽。关羽这个人，有勇也有谋，就是骄傲自大。刘备做了汉中王，派人带了官印封他为前将军，关羽还不大满意。后来经人一解释，说汉中王怎样看重他，他才乐意地接受了。

这一次，刘备命令关羽进攻，关羽派两个都督留守江陵和公安，自己亲自率领大军进攻樊城。

樊城的魏军守将曹仁赶快向曹操求救。曹操派了于禁、

defeated the Wei (Cao Cao) army, whose commanding general Xia Huiyuan was killed in action. Cao Cao was forced out of Hanzhong and withdrew the Wei army to Chang'an.

In the aftermath of these battles, Liu Bei saw his position in Yizhou further consolidated. In 219 AD, with the enthusiastic support of his ministers and generals, Liu Bei declared himself King of Hanzhong.

The strategy mapped out by Zhuge Liang to deal with Cao Cao called for a two-phase approach. Now that the western campaign into Hanzhong had succeeded, Liu Bei should press his new military advantage by going east from Jingzhou to take the central plains.

The commander of the Jingzhou garrison was General Guan Yu, who though both intelligent and strong was also arrogant and conceited. After declaring himself King of Hanzhong, Liu Bei made him General of the Army of the Front, but Guan Yu remained unimpressed. It was only after the messenger bringing the appointment order and the official seal had painstakingly explained to him how the King of Hanzhong valued his service that he finally cheered up and accepted the appointment.

Liu Bei also made Guan Yu the commander-in-chief of the eastern campaign. Guan Yu left the defense of Jiangling and Gong'an to two of his men, while he led a large force to attack Fancheng.

Cao Ren, the commander of the Wei troops defending Fancheng, urgently appealed to Cao Cao for help. Cao Cao duly sent seven contingents under the command of generals Yu Jin and Pang De to reinforce the garrison of Fancheng. At the

庞德两员大将率领七支人马前去增援。曹仁让他们屯兵在樊城北面平地上，和城中互相呼应，使关羽没法攻城。

正在双方相持不下的时候，樊城一带下了一场大雨。汉水猛涨，平地的水高出地面有一丈多。于禁的军营扎在平地上，四面八方大水冲来，把七军的军营全淹没了。于禁和他的将士不得不泅水找个高地避水。

关羽早就抓住于禁在平地上扎营这个弱点。他趁着大水，安排好一批大小船只，率领水军向曹军进攻。他们先把主将于禁围住，叫他放下武器投降。于禁被围在一个汉水中的小土堆上，逼得无路可退，就垂头丧气地投降了。

庞德带了另一批兵士避水到一个河堤上。关羽的水军向他们围攻，船上的弓箭手一起向堤上射箭。

庞德手下有个部将害怕了，对庞德说：“我们还是投降了吧！”

庞德骂那部将没志气，拔剑把他砍死在堤上。兵士们看到庞德这样坚决，也都跟着他抵抗。庞德不愧不忙拿起弓箭回射，他的箭法很好，蜀军被射死不少。双方从早打到中午，从中午打到午后。庞德的箭使完了，就叫兵士们一起拔出短

request of Cao Ren, these units set up defenses in the level terrain north of Fancheng and coordinated their operations with the city defenders. Guan Yu was thus prevented from storming the city.

As the stand-off continued, heavy rain began to fall in Fancheng, causing the Han River to flood. The flood water rose to ten feet above ground level and submerged the barracks of the seven contingents camping outside the city. Yu Jin and his troops had to swim to higher ground for safety.

Guan Yu had foreseen this vulnerability of the Yu Jin contingents camped on low ground. Taking advantage of the flood, he led a river force against the Cao troops. Guan Yu's forces surrounded Yu Jin, who was stranded on a mound of earth in the middle of the river, and called on him to surrender. The crestfallen Yu Jin had no alternative.

Guan Yu went on to attack Pang De, who had found refuge on a river dike with some troops. Archers on Guan Yu's ships showered the dike with arrows.

A frightened soldier said to Pang De, "Why don't we surrender?"

Pang De swung around and killed the officer with his sword. Their general's determination to fight inspired the soldiers to put up a stiff resistance. Pang De calmly picked up his bow and shot back at Guan Yu's ships. His accurate aims felled many Shu soldiers. The battle lasted from morning till late in the afternoon. When they had no more arrows left, Pang De told his soldiers to use their daggers in hand-to-hand combat. He said to the troops around him, "It is said that a good general will not run for his life and a brave soldier will

刀来搏斗。他跟身边的将士说：“我听说良将不会为了怕死而逃命，烈士不会为了活命而失节。今天就是我死的日子了。”

这时候，大水越涨越高，堤上露出的地面越来越小。关羽水军的大船进攻更加猛烈，曹军的兵士纷纷投降。庞德趁着这乱哄哄的时候，带了三个将士，从蜀军兵士中抢了一只小船，想逃到樊城去，不料一个浪头袭来，把小船掀翻了。庞德掉在水里，关羽水军赶上去，把他活捉了。

将士们把庞德带回关羽大营，关羽好言好语劝他投降，庞德骂着说：“魏王手里有人马一百万，威震天下，你们的主人刘备，不过是个庸碌的人，怎能和魏王相敌。我宁可做国家的鬼，也不愿做你们的将军！”

关羽大怒，一挥手，命令武士把庞德杀了。

关羽消灭了于禁、庞德的七军，乘胜进攻樊城。樊城里里外外都是水，城墙也被洪水冲坏了好几处。曹仁手下的将士都害怕了。有人对曹仁说：“现在这个局面，我们也没法守了，趁现在关羽的水军还没合围，赶快乘小船逃吧！”

曹仁也觉得守下去没希望，就跟一起守城的满宠商量。满宠说：“山洪暴发，不会很久，过几天水就会退下去。听说

not forfeit his honor just to save his skin. This is the day that I shall die."

As the flood water continued to rise, the emerged part of the dike kept shrinking. As Guan Yu's naval attack with big river craft gained in intensity, the Cao troops surrendered in droves. In the midst of the confusion, Pang De and three of his officers grabbed a small boat from the Shu troops and were trying to flee to Fancheng when a sudden wave flipped their boat over. Guan Yu's forces rushed to the scene and fished Pang De out of the water.

When Pang De was brought to Guan Yu's tent, where he tried to coax Pang De into surrender, However, Pang De retorted angrily, "The King of Wei has a million men under his command, and the entire nation bows before his authority. Your master Liu Bei is a puny figure in comparison with the King of Wei. I would rather die a martyr of the country than consent to be a general under your master!"

In a fury, Guan Yu waved his hand and his guards leapt forward and killed Pang De.

After decimating the seven armies of Yu Jin and Pang De, Guan Yu pressed his advantage and attacked Fancheng, which was awash with flood water and whose city walls had crumbled under the pressure of the rushing water. The troops under Cao Ren were thrown into a panic. Some of them approached Cao Ren to give him advice. "The city is undefendable under these circumstances. We should escape in small boats before Guan Yu's naval force closes the noose on us."

Cao Ren was also of the view that there was not much hope of holding the city. However, Man Chong, another general in

关羽已经派人在另一条道上向北进攻。他自己没有敢进兵，是因为怕咱们截他的后路。要是我们一逃，那么黄河以南，恐怕就不是我们的了。请将军再坚持一下吧。”

曹仁觉得满宠说得有理，就鼓励将士坚守下去。

这时候，陆浑（今河南嵩县东北）百姓孙狼发动起义，杀了县里的官员，响应关羽。许都以南，其他响应的人也不少。关羽的威名震动了整个中原。

魏王曹操到了洛阳，得到各方面的警报，有点着慌。他跟百官商议，准备暂时放弃许都，避避关羽的势头。

谋士司马懿说：“大王不必担心。我看刘备和孙权两家，表面很亲热，实际上互相猜忌得厉害。这次关羽得意了，孙权一定不乐意。我们何不派人去游说孙权，答应把江东封给他，约他夹攻关羽。这样，樊城之围自然会解除了。”

曹操听了司马懿的意见，真的打发使者到孙权那里去。

charge of the defense of the city, told him. "The flash flood will recede in a few days. According to our intelligence reports, Guan Yu has sent troops north by another route. He has remained behind probably for fear of having his escape route cut off. If we flee now, the territories south of the Yellow River will likely no longer be ours. Let's hold on for a little longer!"

Conceding that Man Chong was right, Cao Ren encouraged his troops to continue the defense of the city.

In the meantime, Sun Lang, a resident of Luhun (northeast of today's Song County in Henan), led an uprising after killing the county officials and pledged his allegiance to Guan Yu. The uprising attracted a large following south of Xudu and helped to spread Guan Yu's reputation through the central plains.

After his arrival in Luoyang, Cao Cao was more than a little flustered by the spate of bad news. Alarmed at the recent turn of events, he gathered his officials to discuss his idea of temporarily evacuating Xudu to avoid a frontal confrontation with Guan Yu.

"His Highness need not worry." His adviser Sima Yi said. "In my opinion, under the ostensibly close relationship between Liu Bei and Sun Quan lurks deep mutual mistrust. Now that Guan Yu has reason to feel good, Sun Quan is bound to be upset. Why don't we send someone to lobby Sun Quan and dangle before him the lure of recognizing his sovereignty over Jiangdong in return for his agreement to attack Guan Yu in coordination with us? This would relieve the siege of Fancheng."

Heeding Sima Yi's advice, Cao Cao sent an envoy to see Sun Quan.

10、吕蒙白衣渡江

司马懿的分析是有道理的。刘备和孙权两家虽然结了盟，但是矛盾很大。鲁肃在世的时候，是主张吴蜀和好，一起对付曹操的。后来鲁肃死了，接替他职务的大将吕蒙，就和鲁肃的主张不同。

吕蒙是东吴名将。他从小就练得一身好武艺，年轻时候立了不少战功，受到孙权的器重。

有一次，孙权对吕蒙说：“你现在责任重了，应该抽时间读点书才好。”

吕蒙说：“在军营里事务那么多，哪儿还有时间读书呢？”

孙权笑着说：“我并不是要你像博士（官名）那样精通经书，只是要你多浏览一些兵法，懂得一点历史罢了。你说事情多，总比不上我多吧！我自己就有这个经验，读了一些兵法、历史，对自己很有帮助。你不妨试一试。”

吕蒙听了孙权的劝告，一有空就认真读书。

10. Lü Meng Crosses the River in White

Sima Yi's analysis was indeed on target. Their alliance notwithstanding, tensions were running high between Liu Bei and Sun Quan. When Lu Su was still alive, he had advocated a Wu-Shu alliance against Cao Cao. General Lü Meng, who took over from Lu Su did not share his approach.

Lü Meng was a renowned general of the state of Wu. His fine military skills enabled him to distinguish himself in numerous battles very early in his career, and he soon came to the notice of Sun Quan, who assigned important responsibilities to him.

On one occasion Sun Quan said to Lü Meng, "Since you have an important charge now, you should devote some time to reading."

"There are so many things that demand my attention in the army, I could hardly find time for books," Lü Meng replied.

"I do not mean for you to be versed in all the classics. I merely want you to read more on the arts of war and on history. You say you have too many things to attend to; I don't think you have more on your hands than I do. Some knowledge of the arts of war and history has helped me a lot. Why not give it a try?"

Following Sun Quan's advice, Lü Meng started to read whenever he had a chance.

鲁肃经过吕蒙的驻地时去看望吕蒙。鲁肃原来以为吕蒙不过是一员武将，没有什么雄才大略。这回，他和吕蒙谈话以后，听到吕蒙议论风生，见解精辟，十分佩服，说：“你现在的才能胆识，跟当年吴下（即吴中）阿蒙，大不一样了。”

吕蒙自豪地说：“对一个人，三天不见就应该刮目相待。您可不能用老眼光看人哪！”

吕蒙接替了鲁肃的职位以后，率军驻扎在陆口（今湖北嘉鱼西南）。他认为关羽有兼并东吴的野心，向孙权上书要求出兵对付关羽，说：“刘备、关羽君臣，都是反复无常的人，不能把他们当盟友看待。”

孙权也觉得关羽狂妄自大。孙权曾经派人去向关羽求亲，希望关羽把女儿嫁给他儿子。关羽不但不答应，反而把使者辱骂了一顿，使孙权气得要命。这次，孙权接到了吕蒙的信，更觉得非把关羽除掉不可。

正好在这个时候，曹操派使者来联络，要他夹攻关羽。孙权马上复信，表示愿意袭击关羽的后方。

关羽也听说吕蒙厉害，在蜀吴交界一带，布置得严严实实。

吕蒙本来经常有病，这一回，他就装作旧病发作，而且

When Lu Su passed through Lü Meng's garrison, he paid a visit to Lü Meng. He had thought Lü Meng was just another general, undistinguished by any great talents or grand vision. He was therefore surprised by the general's articulate and incisive arguments, as well as by his eloquence. He said to Lü Meng, "Your vision and insights are in sharp contrast to what I observed in you years ago."

"Remember the popular saying: you need to look with fresh eyes on a person every three days." Lü Meng replied with pride.

After taking over Lu Su's position, Lü Meng assumed garrison duty in Lukou (southwest of today's Jiyu in Hubei). Convinced of Guan Yu's intention to annex Jiangdong and the state of Wu, he petitioned Sun Quan to send troops against Guan Yu. "Both Liu Bei and Guan Yu are chameleons by nature; they can't be regarded as dependable allies." He argued.

Sun Quan also perceived Guan Yu as arrogant and conceited. Sun Quan had on numerous occasions sent matchmakers to Guan Yu in the hope of obtaining his consent to marry his daughter to Sun Quan's son. Not content with merely rejecting the idea, Guan Yu hurled insults at the messenger, to the great indignation of Sun Quan. The letter of petition from Lü Meng bolstered his resolve to eliminate Guan Yu.

Cao Cao's proposal of an alliance against Guan Yu was therefore greeted with agreement by Sun Quan.

Guan Yu had heard about Lü Meng's formidable qualities. He had accordingly made watertight deployments along the border of the Wu and the Shu.

Lü Meng, well known for the frequent relapses of his

说是病得很厉害。孙权也正式发布命令，把吕蒙调回去休养，另派了一个年轻的陆逊去接替吕蒙。

这个消息很快传到樊城。关羽听到吕蒙病重，又听说陆逊是个年轻的书生，心里暗暗高兴。

没过几天，陆逊从陆口特地派人拜见关羽。关羽接见使者，使者献上了书信和礼品。信中大意是说，听说将军在樊城水淹七军，俘获于禁，远远近近哪个不称赞将军的神威。这次曹操失败了，我们听得也高兴。我是个书生，很不称职。今后还得靠将军多多照顾呢！

关羽看了陆逊的书信，觉得陆逊态度谦虚、老实，也就放了心，把原来防备东吴的人马陆陆续续调到樊城那边去了。

陆逊把关羽人马调动的情况，随时报告给孙权和吕蒙。

这时候，关羽在樊城接受了于禁的投降兵士几万人，粮草供应发生了困难，就把东吴贮藏在湘关的粮食强占了。

孙权得知湘关的米被抢，就派吕蒙为大都督，命令他迅速袭击关羽的后方。

吕蒙到了寻阳（今湖北黄梅西南），把所有的战船都改装作商船，选了一批精锐的兵士躲在船舱里。船上摇橹的兵士

chronic illness, feigned another flare-up of his malady. Sun Quan acted his part and recalled Lu Meng for recuperation, sending the younger Lu Xun to take his place.

The news soon spread to Fancheng. Guan Yu was soon gloating about Lü Meng's deteriorating health and the fact that Lu Xun was an inexperienced scholar.

A few days later, Lu Xun sent an envoy from Lukou to pay a call on Guan Yu, carrying with him a letter and gifts. The letter said that news of Guan Yu's heroic feats had spread far and wide following the naval defeat of seven Cao armies and the capture of Yu Jin; that Cao Cao's latest setback was a cause for joint celebration; and that the letter writer was a mere scholar unqualified for the job he had been given and therefore counted on General Guan Yu's support in the future.

Deeply impressed by the modesty exhibited in Lu Xun's letter, Guan Yu no longer saw any justification for his worries, and so began to redeploy his troops away from the Wu border to Fancheng. These troop movements were duly reported to Sun Quan and Lü Meng.

However, having accepted the surrender of several tens of thousands of Yu Jin's soldiers in Fancheng, Guan Yu was having difficulty ensuring enough food supplies, and so expropriated the grain stored by the state of Wu in Xiangguan.

When he learned that his supplies had been grabbed by Guan Yu, Sun Quan made Lü Meng commander-in-chief of an army sent to attack Guan Yu's troops.

At Xunyang (southwest of today's Huangmei in Hubei), Lu Meng disguised all his battleships as merchant ships, hiding his troops in their holds. The soldiers manning the oars and

扮作商人，一律穿上商人穿的白色衣服。就这样，一列又一列商船向北岸进发了。

到了北岸，蜀军守防的兵士一看都是穿白衣的商人，就允许他们把船停在江边。没想到一到晚上，船舱里的兵士一齐出来，偷偷摸进江边岗楼，把蜀军将士全部抓住，把岗楼占了。

吕蒙大军神不知鬼不觉地占领了北岸，进军公安。留守公安、江陵的蜀军将领本来对关羽很不满意，经吕蒙一劝降，都投降了。

吕蒙进了城，派人慰问蜀军将士家属，并且吩咐东吴将士严守纪律，不许侵犯百姓。有一个东吴兵士，是吕蒙的同乡，因为天下雨，拿了老百姓家的一顶斗笠遮盖铠甲。吕蒙发现后，认为这个兵士违犯了军令。虽说是同乡人，但是犯了军令不能不办罪，就把他杀了。这样一来，全军将士都震动了，谁也不敢违反军令。

这时候，曹操派去的徐晃率领的援军，已到了靠近樊城的前线。徐晃把孙权答应曹操夹攻关羽的信抄写了许多份，射进关羽营寨里。关羽得知吕蒙袭击后方的消息，正在进退两难的时候，徐晃发起进攻，打败了关羽，使关羽不得不撤去对樊城的包围。

关羽派使者到江陵去探听情况。使者一到江陵，吕蒙派

paddles were all dressed in white, as was customary for merchants of the time.

When the Shu troops guarding the north bank saw that the boats were filled with white-clad merchants, they allowed them to moor their crafts by the shore. At nightfall, the soldiers ensconced in the holds emerged and attacked the watchtowers near the shore, capturing all the Shu troops and taking control of the towers.

Lü Meng's army then marched on Gong'an. The generals responsible for the defense of Gong'an and Jiangling had never liked Guan Yu, so when Lü Meng urged them to surrender they readily submitted.

After Lü Meng's army entered a city, he would send messengers to reassure the families of the Shu troops and would impose strict discipline on his troops, forbidding them to harass the local people. In one instance a Wu soldier, who happened to be from Lü Meng's home village, took a bamboo hat from a local family to shield his armor from the rain. When Lü Meng's heard about this, he had the soldier executed. This incident proved to be a deterrent for the rest of the troops.

In the meantime, reinforcements commanded by Xu Huang were approaching the front near Fancheng. Xu Huang had his archers fire copies of the letter in which Sun Quan promised Cao Cao to coordinate their attacks against Guan Yu into the latter's camp. Already in a quandary as to what to do about Lü Meng's attack, Guan Yu now faced a new attack by Xu Huang. He was defeated and forced to withdraw his troops laying siege to Fancheng.

Guan Yu then sent an envoy to Jiangling to gather

人殷勤招待，还叫使者到蜀军将士家去看望，这些家属都说东吴的人待他们不错。使者回到自己的军营后，兵士们向他探问家里情况，他就照实说了。大伙儿一听东吴人好，就不愿意再跟东吴打仗，有些兵士甚至偷偷地逃回江陵去了。

关羽到这时候，才知道对东吴的防备太大意，可是已经来不及了。他只好带了人马逃到麦城（今湖北当阳东南）。

孙权进军麦城，派人劝关羽投降。关羽带着十几个骑兵往西逃走。

孙权早已派兵埋伏在小道上，把关羽十几个骑兵截住，活捉了关羽。孙权知道关羽不肯投降，下令就地把他杀了。

曹操认为孙权立了大功，把孙权封为南昌侯，到了曹丕即位称帝以后，又封为吴王。

information. The envoy was offered warm hospitality by Lü Meng and allowed to visit families of Shu troops, who told the envoy that the Wu people treated them decently. When the envoy returned to his camp, he relayed this information to the soldiers who inquired about their families behind enemy lines. When these soldiers heard about the decent treatment their relatives received at the hands of the Wu troops, they lost their will to fight and some soldiers even stole back to Jiangling.

By this time, Guan Yu had realized that he had underestimated the threat of the Wu, but it was already too late. He was forced to retreat with his troops to Maicheng (southeast of today's Dangyang in Hubei).

Sun Quan marched his army to Maicheng and urged Guan Yu to surrender. However, Guan Yu took a dozen cavalymen with him and resumed his westward flight.

The ambushers pre-positioned by Sun Quan on a back road intercepted Guan Yu's party and captured Guan Yu alive. Knowing that Guan Yu would not surrender, Sun Quan had him summarily executed.

In recognition of Sun Quan's great contribution, Cao Cao made him Marquis of Nanchang. When Cao Pi ascended the imperial throne, he made Sun Quan the King of Wu.

11、陆逊火烧连营

公元220年，曹操旧病发作，请医服药都没有用，终于死在洛阳。这一年，他六十六岁。

曹操死后，太子曹丕继承他做了魏王和丞相，掌握朝廷大权。就在这一年秋天，他的亲信联名上书，劝汉献帝让位给魏王。

年末，曹丕称帝，建立魏朝，就是魏文帝。到这时候，东汉王朝才正式结束。

曹丕称帝的消息传到蜀汉，一时传说纷纷，说汉献帝已经被曹丕杀了。汉中王刘备还真的为献帝举行了丧礼。大臣们认为既然汉献帝已经死去，刘备是汉家皇室后代，理应接替皇位。公元221年，汉中王正式在成都即皇位，就是汉昭

11. Lu Xun Torch a 200-mile Chain of Barracks

In 220 AD, Cao Cao had a relapse of a chronic illness, which would not respond to treatment. He died in Luoyang that year at the age of 66.

After Cao Cao's death, his crown prince Cao Pi succeeded him as both King of Wei and Counselor-in-chief to the emperor. In autumn of the same year his supporters and close associates signed a petition to Emperor Xian, urging him to cede the throne to the King of Wei.

By the end of 220 AD, Cao Pi had become emperor and founded the Wei dynasty, assuming the title of Emperor Wen of the Wei dynasty. This formally marked the demise of the Eastern Han dynasty.

When news of Cao Pi's accession to the imperial throne reached the state of Han, rumors were rife that Emperor Xian had been killed by Cao Pi. Liu Bei, the King of Hanzhong, even arranged a funeral for the emperor. Liu Bei's ministers believed that with Emperor Xian's death, Liu Bei, a descendant of the Han royalty, should rightfully succeed him as emperor. In 221 AD, the King of Hanzhong was formally made emperor in Chengdu with the title of Emperor Zhaolie of the Han dynasty. Since the geographical extent of his rule was largely confined to Shu (covering Sichuan, the bulk of Yunnan, Guizhou in its entirety, and parts of Shaanxi and

烈帝。因为他统治的地区在蜀（今四川、云南大部、贵州全部、陕西、甘肃一部分），历史上称为蜀汉或者蜀。

刘备对东吴占领荆州、关羽被杀这件事，一直是十分痛心的。他即位之后，第一件要紧的事就是进攻东吴，报仇雪耻。

大将赵云说，篡夺皇位的是曹丕，不是孙权。如果能灭掉曹魏，东吴自然就会屈服，不该放了曹魏去打东吴。

别的大臣劝谏的也不少，但是刘备说什么也听不进去。他把诸葛亮留在成都辅佐太子刘禅，亲自率领大军去征伐东吴。

刘备一面准备出兵，一面通知张飞到江州（今重庆市）会师。还没有等刘备出兵，张飞的部将叛变，杀了张飞投奔东吴。刘备一连丧失两员猛将，力量大大削弱，但他急于报仇，已经没有冷静考虑的余地了。

警报到了东吴，孙权听说刘备这次出兵声势很大，也有些害怕，派人向刘备求和，但是遭到刘备的拒绝。

没过几天，蜀汉人马已经攻下巫县（今四川巫山县北），一

Gansu), his kingdom was historically known as the Han of Shu or simply Shu.

The capture of Jingzhou and the slaying of Guan Yu had so rankled Liu Bei that his first order after becoming emperor was to avenge these humiliations by attacking Wu of Jiangdong.

His general Zhao Yun argued, however, that it was Cao Pi, not Sun Quan, who had usurped the imperial throne. If the Caos could be annihilated, the submission of Wu would follow as a corollary. He was therefore against attacking Wu while letting Wei off the hook.

Objections were also raised by a significant number of ministers, but they fell on deaf ears. Leaving Zhuge Liang in Chengdu to assist the crown prince Liu Shan, Liu Bei decided to lead a large expeditionary force against Wu.

As preparations were underway for the expedition, Liu Bei instructed Zhang Fei to join forces with him in Jiangzhou (today's Chongqing). Yet before the expeditionary force even began, Zhang Fei was murdered by mutinous soldiers, who then defected to Wu. The loss of two excellent generals in a row greatly weakened Liu Bei's fighting force, but his obsession with revenge continued to cloud his judgement.

Wu was alerted of the impending attack, and Sun Quan was alarmed when he was informed that Liu Bei was pitting a massive force against him. However, his offers of peace were spurned by Liu Bei.

Within a few days, Wu County (north of today's Wushan County in Sichuan) fell to the army of Han of Shu, which went on to take Zigui (in the south of Hubei). Sun Quan had no

直打到秭归（在湖北南部，秭音 zǐ）。孙权知道讲和已经没有希望，就派陆逊为大都督，带领五万人马去抵抗。

刘备出兵没几个月，就攻占了东吴的土地五六百里地。他从秭归出发，率主力沿着长江南岸，翻山越岭一直进军到了猇亭（今湖北宜昌西北，猇音 xiāo）。

东吴将士看到蜀军得寸进尺，步步紧迫，都摩拳擦掌，想和蜀军大战一场。可是大都督陆逊却不同意。

陆逊说：“这次刘备带领大军东征，士气旺盛，战斗力强。再说他们在上游，占领险要地方，我们不容易攻破他。要是跟他们硬拼，万一失利，丢了人马，这是非同小可的事。我们还是积蓄力量，考虑战略。等日子一久，他们疲劳了，我们再找机会出击。”

陆逊部下的将军，有的还是孙策手下的老将，有的是孙氏的贵族，对孙权派年轻的书生陆逊当都督，本来已经不大服气。现在听到陆逊不同意他们出战，认为陆逊胆小怕打仗，更不满意，在背地里愤愤不平。

蜀军从巫县到彝陵（今湖北宜昌东）沿路扎下了几十个大

choice but to send Lu Xun as commander-in-chief of a 50,000-strong force to resist the advancing enemy.

After a few months, Liu Bei's army had penetrated 200 miles into Wu territory. From Zigui he led his main force on a long march that took them across high mountains along the south banks of the Yangtze, until they eventually arrived near Xiaoting (northwest of today's Yichang in Hubei).

Every bite of Wu territory had whetted the Shu army's appetite for larger conquests, and as they pressed relentlessly onward, the soldiers began to long for battle. However, they were overridden by the commander-in-chief Lu Xun.

"The large expeditionary force led by Liu Bei on this eastern campaign has the advantage of high morale and robust combat capability. What's more, they are upstream and therefore control impregnable, strategic high ground. It would be foolhardy for us to risk our troops in a frontal confrontation. The wiser thing to do is increase our strength and take a long view. With time they will be tired out, and that will be our chance to attack."

The generals under Lu Xun were either veterans having served under Sun Ce, or members of the nobility of the Sun lineage, all of whom had been unhappy with Sun Quan's appointment of the young, scholarly Lu Xun as commander-in-chief. When Lu Xun vetoed their idea of engaging Liu Bei's army in battle, they believed that he was too cowardly to fight. Their growing resentment of him was reflected in their private grumblings.

The Shu army established several dozen large camps from Wu County all the way to Yiling (east of today's Yichang in

营，又用树木编成栅栏，把大营连成一片，前前后后长达七百里地。刘备以为这样好比布下天罗地网，只等东吴人来攻，就能把他们消灭。

但是陆逊一直按兵不动。从这年（公元222年）一月到六月，双方相持了半年。

刘备等得急了，派将军吴班带了几千人从山上下来，在平地上扎营，向吴兵挑战。东吴的将军，耐不住性子，要求马上出击。

陆逊笑笑说：“我观察过地形，蜀兵在平地里扎营的兵士虽然少，可是周围山谷一定有伏兵。他们大声嚷嚷引我们打，我们可不能上他们的当。”

将士们还是不相信。过了几天，刘备看见东吴兵不肯交战，知道陆逊识破他的计策，就把原来埋伏的八千蜀军陆续从山谷中撤出来。东吴将士这才知道陆逊说的准。

一天，陆逊突然召集将士们，宣布要向蜀军进攻。将士们说：“要打刘备，早该动手了，现在让他进来了五六百里地，主要的关口要道，都让他占了。我们打过去，不会有好处。”

Hubei), which were enclosed with fences made from tree trunks and branches, creating a chain of barracks that stretched for about two hundred miles. Liu Bei believed that this would act as a dragnet waiting to ensnare any Wu forces who attacked.

Yet still Lu Xun bided his time and made no move. The stand-off lasted from January until June of that year (222 AD).

Liu Bei began to lose his patience and sent his general Wu Ban with several thousand troops down the mountain to pitch tents on the plain and challenge the Wu forces. The Wu generals were also champing at the bit and demanded to be sent into battle.

Lu Xun told his troops, "I've studied the terrain. While it is true that the Shu soldiers camped in the plain are not numerous, there must be an ambush in the surrounding mountain valleys. They are trying to draw us in by clamoring for a fight, but we must not play into their hands by obliging them."

His troops remained unconvinced. Several days later, when the Wu troops still refused to come out for a fight, Liu Bei realized that Lu Xun must have seen through his ruse. When he ordered the withdrawal of the eight thousand Shu troops from the valleys, the Wu troops finally came to the realization that Lu Xun had been right all along.

One day, Lu Xun called an unscheduled meeting of his officers at which he announced his decision to launch an attack on the Shu army. However, his officers expressed doubts. "We have missed the opportunity to attack Liu Bei. Now that he has been allowed to penetrate 200 miles into our territory and has taken control of strategic passes and roads, there's nothing to be gained by attacking him."

陆逊向他们解释说：“刘备刚来的时候，士气旺盛，我们是不能轻易取胜的。现在，他们在这儿呆了这么多日子，一直占不到便宜，兵士们已经很疲劳了。我们要打胜仗，是时候了。”

他派了一小部分兵力先去攻击蜀军的一个营，刚刚靠近蜀营的木栅栏，蜀兵从左右两旁冲出来厮杀，接着，附近的几个连营里的兵士也出来增援。东吴兵抵挡不住，赶快后退，已经损失不少人马。

将军们抱怨陆逊，陆逊说：“这是我试探一下他们的虚实。现在我已经有了破蜀营的办法了。”

当天晚上，陆逊命令将士每人各带一束茅草和火种，预先埋伏在南岸的密林里，只等三更时候，就直奔江边，火烧连营。

到了三更，东吴四员大将率领几万兵士，冲近蜀营，用茅草点起火把，在蜀营的木栅栏边放起火来。那天晚上，风刮得很大，蜀军的营寨都是连在一起的，点着一个营，附近的营也就一起燃烧起来。一下子就攻破了刘备的四十多个大营。

等到刘备发现火起，已经无法抵抗。在蜀兵将士的保护下，刘备总算冲出了火网，逃上了马鞍山。

"When Liu Bei first arrived with his troops, they had high morale going for them and we could not have easily defeated them." Lu Xun explained. "But they have been tied down here for such a long time without making much progress that their soldiers are already tired out. This is the perfect time for us to defeat them."

He dispatched a small contingent to attack a Shu camp. As soon as his troops approached the wooden fence, Shu soldiers charged out from both sides. They were soon reinforced by troops from adjacent camps. The outnumbered Wu contingent, unable to withstand the robust counterattack and having sustained heavy casualties, beat a hasty retreat.

To the complaints of his generals, Lu Xun responded, "That was only a reconnaissance mission to probe the enemy's strengths and weaknesses. Now I have formed a plan to storm the Shu army."

That night, Lu Xun instructed every soldier to bring a bundle of straw and some kindling and hide themselves in the dense woods on the south shore. At midnight they were to charge out of their hiding places and torch the chain of Shu barracks.

At the appointed hour, four Wu generals led a charge of several tens of thousands of troops toward the Shu barracks and set the wooden fence on fire. The fire raced from one camp to the next, aided by the strong wind and the fact that all the camps were linked up by the wooden fences. The forty-odd large camps of Liu Bei's army were soon laid wide open to attack.

By the time Liu Bei realized there was a fire it was too late to put up a fight. Under the protection of his troops, Liu Bei broke out of the blaze and fled into the Ma'an Mountains.

陆逊命令各路吴军，围住马鞍山发起猛攻，留在马鞍山上的上万名蜀军一下子全部溃散了，死伤的不计其数。一直战斗到夜里，刘备才带着残兵败将，突围逃走。吴军发现了，紧紧在后面追赶。还亏得沿途的驿站，把丢下的辎重，盔甲堵塞在山口要道上，阻挡住了东吴的追兵，刘备才逃到了白帝城（今重庆奉节县白帝山上）。

这一场大战，蜀军几乎全军覆没，船只、器械和军用物资，全部被吴军缴获。历史上把这场战争称作“猇亭之战”，也叫“彝陵之战”。

刘备失败之后，又悔又恨，说：“我竟被陆逊打败，这岂不是天意吗？”过了一年，他在永安（今重庆奉节）病倒了。

Lu Xun ordered all his troops to surround the Ma'an Mountains and begin an all-out attack; the ten thousand Shu troops in the mountains were soon routed and suffered a huge number of casualties. The battle lasted into the night, when Liu Bei was finally able to breach the encirclement with a few remaining troops. When the Wu troops discovered his escape they immediately gave chase. The pursuing Wu troops were handicapped by the heavy pieces of equipment and armor thrown in piles in the middle of mountain passes by the successive post houses to help Liu Bei to escape to Baidi (in today's Fengjie County in Chongqing).

In this battle, the entire Shu army was decimated and all its riverine naval craft, materiel and equipment was captured by the Wu troops. This battle is historically known as the Battle of Xiaoting or the Battle of Yiling.

Following this debacle, Liu Bei ruefully remarked, "How did I lose to someone like Lu Xun? It must be my bad karma!" A year later he came down with an illness in Yong'an (today's Fengjie in Chongqing).

12、七擒孟获

蜀汉先主刘备在永安病势越来越重。他把诸葛亮从成都召到永安，嘱咐后事。他对诸葛亮说：“您的才能比曹丕高出十倍，一定能够把国家治理好。我的孩子阿斗（太子刘禅的小名），您认为可以辅助，就辅助他；如果不行，您就自己来做一国之主吧。”

诸葛亮流着眼泪，哽咽着说：“我怎敢不尽心竭力，报答陛下，一直到死！”

刘备把小儿子刘永叫到身边，叮嘱他说：“我死之后，你们兄弟要像对待父亲一样尊敬丞相。”

刘备死后，诸葛亮回到成都，扶助刘禅即了帝位，历史上称为蜀汉后主。

刘禅即位后，朝廷上的事不论大小，都由诸葛亮来决定。诸葛亮兢兢业业，治理国家，想使蜀汉兴盛起来。没料到南中地区（今四川大渡河以南和云南、贵州一带）几个郡倒先闹起来了。

12. Meng Huo's Seventh Capture

As his health continued to worsen, Liu Bei, the founder of the Han of Shu, summoned Zhuge Liang to Yong'an from Chengdu to leave instructions for after his death. He told Zhuge Liang, "You are ten times more able than Cao Pi, so I'm sure you will put the country on the right track. If you think my son Adou (infant name of the crown prince Liu Shan) can be helped, then by all means help him. Otherwise, I want you to take over from him as ruler."

Zhuge Liang had tears streaming down his cheeks and his voice was broken by sobs. "The only way to repay your trust, sire, is to give my best till my last breath."

Liu Bei called his youngest son Liu Yong to his bedside and said to him, "After my death you and your brothers must respect the Counselor-in-chief as you do your father."

Following Liu Bei's death, Zhuge Liang returned to Chengdu and with his assistance Liu Shan ascended the throne. He would later be known as the Last Emperor of the Han of Shu.

Following Liu Shan's accession, all matters of state, regardless of their gravity, were decided by Zhuge Liang, who worked diligently for the prosperity of the Han of Shu. Yet trouble soon started in several commanderies of the Nanzhong region (covering parts of present-day Sichuan, Yunnan and Guizhou).

益州郡有个豪强雍闿（音kǎi），听说刘备死去，就杀死了益州太守，发动叛变。他一面投靠东吴，一面又拉拢了南中地区一个少数民族首领孟获，叫他去联络西南一些部族起来反抗蜀汉。

经过雍闿的煽动，牂柯（音zāng kē，在今贵州遵义一带）太守朱褒、越嶲（今四川西昌县东南，嶲音xi）部族酋长高定，也都响应雍闿。这样一来，蜀汉差不多丢了一半土地，怎么不叫诸葛亮着急呢？

可是，当时蜀汉刚遭到猇亭大败和先主死亡，顾不上出兵。诸葛亮一面派人和东吴重新讲和，稳住了这一头，一面奖励生产，兴修水利，积蓄粮食，训练兵马。过了两年，局面稳定了，诸葛亮决定发兵南征。

公元225年三月，诸葛亮率领大军出发。诸葛亮好友马良的弟弟、参军马谡（音su）送诸葛亮出城，一直送了几十里地。

临别的时候，诸葛亮攥住马谡的手，诚恳地说：“我们相处好几年了。今天临别，您有什么好主意告诉我吗？”

A powerful local figure in the Yizhou Commandery by the name of Yong Kai had killed the governor after learning of Liu Bei's death, and had then started a rebellion. He switched his allegiance to the kingdom of Wu of Jiangdong and cultivated ties with Meng Huo, the leader of an ethnic minority in Nanzhong, instigating him to rally other tribal groups in the southwest against the kingdom of Han of Shu.

At Yong Kai's instigation, Zhu Bao, the governor of Zangke (near today's Zunyi in Guizhou) and Gao Ding, a tribal chief in Yuexi (southeast of today's Xichang County in Sichuan) also rose in revolt. Half of Shu territory was thus lost, to the great consternation of Zhuge Liang.

The state of Han of Shu was then still recovering from the debacle of Xiaoting and the death of its founding emperor, and was therefore in no position to plunge back into war. Zhuge Liang brought about a reconciliation with the state of Wu of Jiangdong to ensure stability in the east. He implemented incentive measures to promote production, undertook irrigation works, accumulated surplus grain and intensified military training. When stability was restored two years later, Zhuge Liang decided to launch a southern campaign.

In March of 225 AD, Zhuge Liang set off at the head of a large army. Ma Su, the younger brother of Zhuge Liang's close friend Ma Liang, accompanied Zhuge Liang until they were miles out of the city.

When parting, Zhuge Liang took Ma Su's hands in his and said, "We have been friends for many years now. Do you have any good advice to offer me before we say goodbye?"

但是事情还没有结束。南中酋长孟获收集了零散的散兵，继续反抗蜀兵。诸葛亮一打听，知道孟获不但打仗骁勇，而且在南中地区各族群众中很有威望。

马忠又攻破叛军，消灭了那里的叛军。四个郡的叛乱很快就平定了。

诸葛亮乘胜追击，马忠两员大将分两路进攻，不到半个月，军打进越雒，又把高定杀了。

越雒酋长高定和雍闿已经发生火并。高定的部下杀了雍闿。蜀军打进越雒，又把他杀了。

诸葛亮率领蜀军向南进军，节节胜利。大军还在半路上，马谡说：“南中的人依仗地形险要，离开都城又远，早就

不服管了。即使我们用大军把他们征服了，以后还是要闹事的。我听说用兵的办法，主要在于攻心，攻城是次要的。丞相这次南征，一定要叫南人心服，才能够一劳永逸呢。”

马谡的话，正合诸葛亮的心意。诸葛亮不禁连连点头说：“谢谢您的帮助，我一定这样办。”

"Because of their inaccessible terrain and their geographical remoteness from the capital, the people of Nanzhong have long resisted the central government. Even if we subjugate them with overwhelming force, they are bound to make trouble in the future. I understand that the key to the art of war is winning hearts and minds. Military conquest is secondary to that. On your southern campaign make sure you win the hearts of the people of Nanzhong. That's the only way to solve the problem once and for all," Ma Su replied.

Ma Su had spoken Zhuge Liang's mind and the latter nodded approvingly. "Thank you for your helpful advice! I will do as you say."

The Shu expeditionary force led by Zhuge Liang scored a string of victories as it marched southward. With the large Shu force still halfway from their territory, Gao Ding (the chieftain of Yuexi) and Yong Kai were already in a pitched battle. Yong Kai was soon killed, yet when the Shu troops marched into Yuexi, they slew Gao Ding.

Zhuce Liang attacked in two prongs, led by his generals Li Hui and Ma Zhong respectively. In less than a fortnight, Ma Zhong broke the defenses of Zangke, wiping out all the rebels in the area. The rebellion of the four commanderies was thus put down in short order.

However, trouble was far from over. After absorbing Yong Kai's remaining troops, Meng Huo, a chieftain of Nanzhong, continued his resistance against the Shu army. Zhuge Liang found out that not only was Meng Huo a brave warrior but that he also enjoyed great prestige and authority among the tribes that inhabited Nanzhong.

诸葛亮想起马谡临别的话，决心把孟获争取过来。他下了一道命令，只许活捉孟获，不能伤害他。

好在诸葛亮善于用计谋，蜀军和孟获军队交锋的时候，蜀军故意败退下来。孟获仗着他人多，一股劲儿追了过去，很快就中了蜀兵的埋伏。南兵被打得四处逃散，孟获本人就被活捉了。

孟获被押到大营，心里想，这回一定没有活路了。没想到进了大营，诸葛亮立刻叫人给他松了绑，好言好语劝说他归降。但是孟获不服气，说：“我自己不小心，中了你的计，怎么能叫人心服？”

诸葛亮也不勉强他，陪着他一起骑着马在大营外兜了一圈，看看蜀军的营垒和阵容。然后又问孟获：“您看我们的人马怎么样？”

孟获傲慢地说：“以前我没弄清楚你们的虚实，所以败了。今天承蒙您给我看了你们的阵势，我看也不过如此。像这样的阵势，要打赢你们也不难。”

Recalling Ma Su's parting advice, Zhuge Liang decided to try to win Meng Huo over. He ordered his troops to capture Meng Huo alive and to make sure that no harm was done to him.

With characteristic astuteness, Zhuge Liang directed his forces to beat a false retreat after a skirmish with the troops of Meng Huo, who sent his soldiers in hot pursuit of the fleeing enemy in the belief that his force enjoyed a numerical advantage. Yet it did not take him long to realize he had walked into an ambush; his troops dispersed in all directions and Meng Huo was subsequently captured alive.

When Meng Huo was bound and taken to Zhuge Liang's headquarters, he was sure he would be killed. To his surprise, Zhuge Liang ordered that he be untied as soon as he was brought into the commander's tent. Zhuge Liang began to try to regain Meng Huo's fealty to the the Han of Shu, but Meng Huo would not change his position. "I walked into your trap only because of my carelessness. This is not fair."

Zhuge Liang did not insist, but instead rode with Meng Huo around his camp to show him the fortifications and the state of his troops. "What do you think of my troops?" He asked Meng Huo.

"I was defeated before because I was ignorant of the true state of your forces. I thank you for showing it to me. I am not impressed. I don't think it will be difficult to defeat you." Meng Huo replied.

诸葛亮爽朗地笑了起来，说：“既然如此，您就回去好好准备一下再打吧！”

孟获被释放以后，逃回自己部落，重整旗鼓。又一次进攻蜀军。但是他本是一个有勇无谋的人，哪里是诸葛亮的对手，第二次又乖乖地被活捉了。

诸葛亮劝他，见孟获还是不服，又放了他。

像这样放了又捉，一次又一次，一直把孟获捉了七次。

到了孟获第七次被捉的时候，诸葛亮还要再放。孟获却不愿意走了。他流着眼泪说：“丞相七擒七纵，待我可说是仁至义尽了。我打心底里敬服。从今以后，不敢再反了。”

孟获回去以后，还说服各部落全部投降，南中地区就重新归蜀汉控制。

诸葛亮平定南中后，命令孟获和各部落的首领照旧管理他们原来的地区。有人对诸葛亮说：“我们好不容易征服了南中，为什么不派官吏来，反倒仍旧让这些头领管呢？”

Zhuge Liang had a good, hearty laugh. "Since that's how you think, I want you to go back and prepare for the next battle."

After his release, Meng Huo fled back to his tribe and rebuilt his force. Soon he launched another attack against the Shu troops. Brave but naïve warrior that he was, Meng Huo proved no match for Zhuge Liang and was soon captured a second time.

Yet Zhuge Liang's eloquence still failed to win over Meng Huo, and he was set free once again.

The same events came to be repeated seven times. When Meng Huo was captured for the seventh time, Zhuge Liang intended to free him, but this time Meng Huo was reluctant to go. "You've captured me seven times and every time you've set me free again. You've done everything you could to be kind to me and I respect you from the bottom of my heart. From now on I can no longer bring myself to rebel against you."

Upon his return, Meng Huo secured the submission of all the tribes and the Nanzhong region once again reverted to Shu control.

Following the pacification of Nanzhong, Zhuge Liang decreed that Meng Huo and the other chieftains should administer their respective areas as they used to. Some of his generals said to Zhuge Liang, "The reconquest of Nanzhong has not been easy. Why do you leave the same old chiefs in power instead of appointing officials from the capital?"

诸葛亮说：“我们派官吏来，没有好处，只有不方便。因为派官吏，就得留兵。留下大批兵士，粮食接济不上，叫他们吃什么。再说，刚刚打过仗，难免死伤了一些人，如果我们留下官吏统治，一定会发生祸患。现在我们不派官吏，既不要留军队，又不需要运军粮。让各部落自己管理，汉人和各部落相安无事，岂不更好？”

诸葛亮率领大军回到成都。后主和朝廷大臣都到郊外迎接，大家都为平定南中而感到高兴。

打那以后，诸葛亮一面积蓄财富，一面训练人马，一心一意准备大举北伐。

"The cons far outweigh the pros in sending officials from the capital," Zhuge Liang replied. "If we send officials, they have to be accompanied by troops, which have to be fed. Besides, recent wars have inevitably left casualties in their wake. If we appoint our officials to administer the region, there is bound to be trouble. If we don't send officials, then we will not need to station troops here and we will not need to worry about sending supplies to the troops. When the tribes get their autonomy, there will be peace between the Hans and the other ethnicities. Surely this is an arrangement that suits everybody."

When Zhuge Liang returned to Chengdu, the Emperor came out of the city to welcome him. The pacification of Nanzhong was cause for national celebration.

Zhuge Liang then turned his attention to preparations for a major northern campaign. To this end he pursued a policy of accumulating national wealth and beginning intensive military training.

13、马谡失街亭

诸葛亮平定南中之后，又经过两年准备，公元227年冬天，就带领大军驻守汉中。因为汉中接近魏、蜀的边界，在那里可以随时找机会进攻魏国。

离开成都的时候，他给后主刘禅上了一道奏章，要后主不要满足现状，妄自菲薄，要亲近贤臣，疏远小人，并且表示他决心担负起兴复汉朝的责任。这道奏章就是历史上有名的《出师表》。

过了年，诸葛亮采用声东击西的办法，传出消息，要攻打郿城（今陕西眉县），并且派大将赵云带领一支人马，进驻箕谷（今陕西褒城北），装出要攻打郿城的样子。魏军得到情报，果然把主要兵力去守郿城。诸葛亮趁魏军不防备，亲自率领大军，突然从西路扑向祁山（今甘肃礼县东）。

蜀军经过诸葛亮几年严格训练，阵容整齐，号令严明，士

13. Ma Su Loses Jieting

In the winter of 227 AD, two years after the pacification of Nanzhong, Zhuge Liang was ready and fully prepared. He led a large garrison force into Hanzhong, which, by virtue of its proximity to the border between Wei and Shu, would be an ideal base from which he could invade the kingdom of Wei at the time of his choosing.

Before setting off from Chengdu, he presented a memorial to Liu Shan, the Last Emperor, in which he cautioned him against complacency and misplaced humility, and encouraged him to surround himself with sage counselors and to shun base-spirited persons. He also expressed his determination to take on the responsibility of restoring the Han dynasty. This is the historically famous "Chu Shi Biao" (memorial to the emperor on the occasion of the troops' send-off).

The following year, Zhuge Liang employed a feint: he leaked out information that he was targeting Meicheng (what is now Mei County in Shaanxi) while actually dispatching his general Zhao Yun to lead a contingent into Ji Valley (north of what is now the city of Xihao in Shaanxi). When the leaked news reached the Wei army, it deployed the bulk of its troops to Meicheng, just as Zhuge Liang had planned. This when the Wei army least expected it, the massive force led by Zhuge Liang advanced on Mount Qi (east of today's Li County in Gansu) from the west.

Years of rigorous training had made the Shu army into a

气十分旺盛。自从刘备死后，蜀汉多年没有动静，魏国毫无防备，这次蜀军突然袭击祁山，守在祁山的魏军抵挡不了，纷纷败退。蜀军乘胜进军，祁山北面天水、南安、安定三个郡的守将都背叛魏国，派人向诸葛亮求降。

那时候，魏文帝曹丕已经病死。魏国朝廷文武官员听到蜀汉大举进攻，都惊慌失措。刚刚即位的魏明帝曹叡（音ruì）比较镇静，立刻派张郃带领五万人马赶到祁山去抵抗，还亲自到长安去督战。

诸葛亮到了祁山，决定派出一支人马去占领街亭（今甘肃庄浪东南），作为据点。让谁来带领这支人马呢。当时他身边还有几个身经百战的老将。可是他都没有用，单单看中参军马谡。

马谡这个人确是读了不少兵书，平时很喜欢谈论军事。诸葛亮找他商量起打仗的事来，他就谈个没完，也出过一些好主意。因此诸葛亮很信任他。但是刘备在世的时候，却看出马谡不大踏实。他在生前特地叮嘱诸葛亮，说：“马谡这个人言过其实，不能派他干大事，还得好好考察一下。”但是诸

well-organized and disciplined fighting force with high morale. Meanwhile, the uneventful years on the Shu front following Liu Bei's death had lulled the kingdom of Wei into a false sense of security. Therefore, the Shu army's attack on Mount Qi caught the Wei garrison there totally off guard. The Wei troops retreated before the advancing Shu army, which seized the momentum generated by its fresh victory to press on. The Wei generals defending the commanderies of Tianshui, Nan'an and Anding north of Mount Qi defected and offered to surrender to Zhuge Liang.

Cao Pi, Emperor Wen of the Wei dynasty, also died around this time. So when the court officials of Wei heard about the massive campaign unleashed by Shu Han, they were thrown into great consternation. Cao Rui, the newly crowned Emperor Ming, immediately sent Zhang He with fifty thousand men to Mount Qi, in order to stop the advance of the Shu force. The emperor himself even traveled to Chang'an to direct the battle.

At Mount Qi, Zhuge Liang decided to send a contingent to take control of JiETING (southeast of what is now Zhuanglang in Gansu) as a base for further operations. Bypassing the veteran generals at his side he picked Ma Su to be commander of this contingent.

Ma Su was an avid reader of books on the art of war and enjoyed analysing military science. His good advice on war matters had earned him the trust of Zhuge Liang. Liu Bei, however, suspected Ma Su of being untrustworthy, and he had made a point of warning Zhuge Liang, "Ma Su tends to brag and is not fit for big responsibilities." Zhuge Liang did not

诸葛亮没有把这番话放在心上。这一回，他派马谡当先锋，王平做副将。

马谡和王平带领人马到了街亭，张郃的魏军也正从东面开过来。马谡看了地形，对王平说：“这一带地形险要，街亭旁边有座山，正好在山上扎营，布置埋伏。”

王平提醒他说：“丞相临走的时候嘱咐过，要坚守城池，稳扎营垒。在山上扎营太冒险。”

马谡没有打仗的经验，自以为熟读兵书，根本不听王平的劝告，坚持要在山上扎营。王平一再劝马谡没有用，只好央求马谡拨给他一千人马，让他在山下临近的地方驻扎。

张郃率领魏军赶到街亭，看到马谡放弃现成的城池不守，却把人马驻扎在山上，暗暗高兴，马上吩咐手下将士，在山下筑好营垒，把马谡扎营的那座山围困起来。

马谡几次命令兵士冲下山去，但是由于张郃坚守住营垒，蜀军没法攻破，反而被魏军乱箭射死了不少人。

魏军切断了山上的水源。蜀军在山上断了水，连饭都做不成，时间一长，自己先乱了起来。张郃看准时机，发起总

pay much heed to this warning, and appointed Ma Su to the vanguard in this operation, with Wang Ping as his deputy.

As the troops led by Ma Su and Wang Ping reached Jieting, the Wei forces at the command of Zhang He were marching in from the east. After surveying the surrounding area, Ma Su said to Wang Ping, "We are protected by forbidding terrain here. There is a mountain near Jieting. We can camp on the mountain and prepare an ambush."

"The Counselor-in-chief left instructions to defend the city with fortifications. It is too risky to camp on the mountain," Wang Ping reminded him.

Ma Su, short on war experience but proud of his wide reading on the subject, ignored Wang Ping's advice and insisted on camping on the mountain. After several futile attempts to make Ma Su change his mind, Wang Ping gave up and asked Ma Su to assign one thousand men to him, who he set up camp with at the foot of the mountain.

When Zhang He in Jieting he was delighted to find that Ma Su had not stayed within the city walls to defend it. He immediately proceeded to build fortifications and surround the mountain with troops.

Waves of soldiers charged downhill at Ma Su's orders, but were unable to breach the defenses built by Zhang He's troops. Many Shu soldiers were killed in the shower of arrows released by Wei archers.

With the mountain's water source cut off by the Wei army, the Shu troops were unable to cook their meals, and as the encirclement dragged on there was growing unrest in the Shu encampment. Zhang He chose this moment to launch a general

攻，蜀军兵士纷纷逃散，马谡要禁也禁不了，最后，只好自己杀出重围，往西逃跑。

王平带领一千人马，稳守营盘。他得知马谡失败，就叫兵士拼命打鼓，装出进攻的样子。张郃怀疑蜀军有埋伏，不敢逼近他们。王平整理好队伍，不慌不忙地向后撤退，不但一千人马一个也没损失，还收容了不少马谡手下的散兵。

街亭失守，蜀军失去了重要的据点，又丧失了不少人马。诸葛亮为了避免遭受更大损失，决定把人马全部撤退到汉中。

诸葛亮回到汉中，经过详细查问，知道街亭失守完全是由于马谡违反了他的作战部署。马谡也承认了他的过错。诸葛亮按照军法，把马谡下了监狱，定了死罪。

马谡自己知道免不了一死，在监狱里给诸葛亮写了封信，说：“丞相平日待我像待自己的儿子一样，我也把丞相当作自己的父亲。这次我犯了死罪，希望我死以后，丞相能够像舜杀了鲧还用禹一样，对待我的儿子，我死了也没牵挂了。”

诸葛亮杀了马谡，想起他和马谡平时的情谊，心里十分难过，流下了眼泪。以后，他真的把马谡的儿子照顾得很好。

诸葛亮认为王平在街亭曾经劝阻过马谡，在退兵的时候，

attack. The Shu soldiers dispersed in all directions despite Ma Su's orders to stay grounded. He was forced to fight his way out of the encirclement and flee west.

In the meantime, Wang Ping was securely entrenched with his one thousand troops at the foot of the mountain. When he learned of Ma Su's rout, he ordered his soldiers to make a racket on their drums to simulate a charge. Zhiang He, suspecting an ambush, kept his troops a safe distance from the noise. Wang Ping was thus able to assemble his troops and beat an orderly retreat without a single casualty, even picking up many of the deserters from Ma Su's army.

With the loss of Jieting, the Shu army was deprived of an important base and suffered heavy casualties. In order to cut his losses, Zhuge Liang decided to call his entire army back to Hanzhong.

Zhuce Liang conducted a thorough inquiry upon his return to Hanzhong, and found out that the loss of Jieting was entirely attributable to Ma Su's disregard for his orders. Ma Su was put in jail after being convicted of a capital offense.

In jail, Ma Su wrote a letter to Zhuge Liang. "You have treated me like your own son and I've looked to you as a father. I've committed a capital offense. I hope you can treat my son in the way Emperor Shun of antiquity was able to give important responsibilities to Yu even after putting to death Yu's father Gun. This is my last request of you."

After the execution of Ma Su, Zhuge Liang fondly recalled the happy moments he had shared with Ma Su and, true to his promise, he took good care of Ma Su's son.

Wang Ping, who had tried to prevent Ma Su from making a

又用计保全了人马，立了功，应该受奖励，就把王平提拔为参军，让他统率五部兵马。

诸葛亮对将士们说：“这次出兵失败，固然是因为马谡违反军令，可是我用人不当，也应该负责。”他就上了一份奏章给刘禅，请求把他的官职降低三级。

刘禅接到奏章，不知该怎么办才好。有个大臣说：“既然丞相有这个意见，就依着他吧。”刘禅就下诏把诸葛亮降级为右将军，仍旧办丞相的事。

由于诸葛亮赏罚分明，以身作则，蜀军将士都很感动。大家把这次失败当作教训，士气更加旺盛。这年冬天，诸葛亮又带兵杀出散关（今陕西宝鸡西南），包围了陈仓（今宝鸡东），杀了一个魏将；第二年春天，又出兵收复武都（今甘肃成县）、阴平（今甘肃文县西北）两个郡。后主刘禅认为诸葛亮立了功，下了一道诏书，恢复诸葛亮的丞相职位。

mistake and had contributed to the preservation of his troops. He was promoted by Zhuge Liang to a command of five divisions.

Zhuge Liang told his troops, "This military setback was admittedly a result of Ma Su's insubordination; but I cannot escape responsibility for not picking the right commander." He accordingly asked the emperor to demote him.

Liu Shan was at a loss as to what to do. A minister said, "Since this is what the Counselor-in-chief wants, you should grant his wish." Liu Shan issued an edict announcing the demotion of Zhuge Liang to General of the Right with de facto functions of Counselor-in-chief.

The officers and men of the Shu army were deeply moved by Zhuge Liang's example. They learned important lessons from the defeat and morale was heightened. That winter, Zhuge Liang's forces fought their way out of Sanguan Pass (southwest of what is now Baoji in Shaanxi) and encircled Chencang (east of Baoji), killing a Wei general; the next spring, his force recovered the commanderies of Wudu (today's Cheng County in Gansu) and Yangping (northwest of what is now Wen County in Gansu). In consideration of these achievements, Liu Shan the Last Emperor issued an edict reinstating Zhuge Liang as Counselor-in-chief.

14、五丈原

公元229年四月，吴王孙权正式即位称帝。蜀汉大臣大多数认为孙权称帝是僭号，要求跟东吴断绝盟好关系。诸葛亮却认为，蜀汉眼前主要对手是魏国。他坚持和东吴保持联盟，继续准备北伐。

公元231年，诸葛亮第四次北伐，出兵祁山。魏国派了一个大将司马懿和张郃等一起率领人马赶往祁山。诸葛亮把一部分将士留在祁山，自己率领主力拦击司马懿。

司马懿知道诸葛亮的战略。他认为诸葛亮孤军深入，带的军粮不多，所以在险要的地方筑好营垒，叫将士只守不战。

魏军将领以为司马懿害怕诸葛亮，一再请战，说：“您怕蜀军像害怕老虎一样，难道不怕天下人笑话吗？”

14. Death of a Genius at Wuzhangyuan

In April of 229 AD, Sun Quan, the King of Wu, was formally declared emperor. Most of the ministers of Shu Han believed that he had usurped and therefore demanded an end to Shu's alliance with Wu. Zhuge Liang, on the other hand, believed that the main threat came from Wei. He decided to maintain the alliance with Wu as he prepared for his northern campaign.

In 231 AD, Zhuge Liang launched his fourth northern expedition, marching his troops toward Mount Qi. To resist this offensive, the Kingdom of Wei immediately sent the generals Sima Yi and Zhang He with their troops toward Mount Qi. Leaving some of his troops near Mount Qi, Zhuge Liang led his main force to intercept Sima Yi.

Sima Yi was acquainted with Zhuge Liang's military strategies. In the belief that Zhuge Liang's force had penetrated too deep into enemy territory, carrying only a limited supply of grain, he instructed his troops to shield themselves behind strong defenses and refrain from engaging the opposing forces in battle.

The other Wei generals, thinking Sima Yi was afraid of Zhuge Liang, repeatedly asked for permission to engage the enemy. "You fear the Shu army as if it were a tiger. Aren't you afraid of being made a laughingstock?"

司马懿硬着头皮，带兵赶上去跟诸葛亮大战一场，结果被蜀军杀得一败涂地。但是蜀军由于后方的运粮官员失职，粮草供应不上，只好主动撤兵。大将张郃带兵紧紧追赶，赶到木门一带山谷地带，被诸葛亮预先布置好的伏兵用乱箭射杀了。

诸葛亮几次出兵，往往因为粮食供应不上退兵。他接受这个教训，设计了两种运输工具，叫做“木牛”、“流马”（两种经过改革的小车），用它们把粮食运到斜谷口（在今陕西眉县西南）囤积起来。

公元234年，诸葛亮作好充分准备，发动十万大军进行最后一次北伐。他派使者到东吴，约孙权同时发起攻势，南北策应，使魏国两面受敌。

诸葛亮大军出了斜谷口，到了渭水南岸的五丈原。为了作长期打算，他派一部分兵士构筑营垒，准备作战，另派一部分兵士在五丈原屯田，跟当地老百姓夹杂在一起耕种。蜀军纪律严明，百姓和兵士相处得很好。

Against his better judgment, Sima Yi was pressured to throw his troops into battle. They suffered a crushing defeat. As a result of mishandling by supply officers, the Shu army soon depleted its grain supplies and had to withdraw. The Wei general Zhang He led his troops in hot pursuit of the retreating Shu army until they came to the vicinity of Mumen, an area crisscrossed with valleys, where he met his death in a valley of arrows shot by an ambush laid by Zhuge Liang.

Zhuce Liang had in several operations been forced to withdraw his troops as a result of running out of grain. Chastened by this experience, he devised two kinds of transport: one was called "mu niu" (wooden bullock) and the other "liu ma" (flowing horse) (both were new types of carts). These were used to convey grain to Xiegukou (southwest of modern Mei County in Shaanxi), where it was stored.

In 234 AD, after making thorough preparations Zhuge Liang launched his last northern expedition with a massive force of one hundred thousand men. He sent an envoy to Wu to obtain Sun Quan's agreement to launch a parallel campaign so that they could subject Wei to an orchestrated attack on both its northern and southern flanks.

Zhuce Liang's army marched out of Xiegukou and arrived at Wuzhangyuan, on the south shore of the Wei River. Settling in for a long campaign, he had some of his troops build fortifications to get ready for combat and sent another contingent to Wuzhangyuan to set up a military agricultural zone, where the soldiers joined the local people in planting and farming. The excellent discipline of the Shu army fostered a congenial relationship between the troops and the people.

魏明帝派司马懿率领魏军渡过渭水，也筑起营垒防守，和蜀军对峙着。

孙权接到诸葛亮的信，马上三路出兵进攻魏国。魏明帝也厉害，他一面亲自率领大军到南面抵挡东吴的进攻，一面通知司马懿在五丈原坚持，只守不战。

诸葛亮等待东吴方面的消息，但是结果使他很失望：孙权的进攻失败了。他想跟魏军决战，但是司马懿始终稳守营垒，诸葛亮几次三番向他挑战没有用。双方在那里相持了一百多天。

要使魏军出来打，只有想法子激怒司马懿。诸葛亮利用当时轻视妇女的风俗，派人给司马懿送去一套妇女的服饰。意思就是司马懿这样胆小怕战，还是回去做个“闺房小姐”吧。

魏军将士看到主将受到嘲弄，气恼得嚷着要跟蜀军拼。司马懿知道这是诸葛亮的激将法，并不发火。他安慰将士说：“好，我向皇上上个奏章，请求准许我们跟蜀军决战一场。”

过了几天，魏明帝派了一个大臣赶到魏营，传达命令，不许出战。

蜀军将士听到消息，感到失望。只有诸葛亮懂得司马懿

Emperor Ming of the Wei dynasty sent Sima Yi and his troops across the Wei River, where they also built fortifications opposite the Shu army.

After reading Zhuge Liang's letter, Sun Quan sent three contingents against Wei. In response, Emperor Ming personally led a large force to resist the attack from the south while ordering Sima Yi to hold his ground in Wuzhangyuan and to defend the city.

Zhugue Liang had been waiting for news from the Wu front, but was disappointed to hear that Sun Quan's attack had been repelled. He wanted a decisive battle with the Wei forces, but Sima Yi stayed behind his fortifications, refusing to be provoked by Zhuge Liang's repeated challenges. The stand-off lasted over a hundred days.

To try and provoke him into battle, Zhuge Liang sent Sima Yi a woman's dress with the implication that he was not manly enough to come out and fight.

When the Wei troops saw that their commander-in-chief had been taunted in such an insulting fashion, they clamored for a fight with the enemy. Well aware that it was simply a trick to provoke a rash reaction, Sima Yi tried to calm his staff. "Very well! I will ask the emperor for permission to attack the Shu army."

A few days later a minister was dispatched by the emperor to the Wei camp, conveying the imperial order against engaging the enemy.

The officers of the Shu army were disappointed by the news, but Zhuge Liang understood Sima Yi's actions. "Sima Yi's query of his emperor was merely a show intended for

的用意，说：“司马懿上奏章请求打仗，这是做给将士们看的，要不然，大将率领军队在外，哪有千里迢迢去请战的道理。”

诸葛亮料到司马懿的心理，司马懿也在探听诸葛亮的情况。有一次，诸葛亮派使者到魏营去挑战，司马懿挺有礼貌地接待使者，跟使者聊天，说：“你们丞相公事一定很忙吧，近来身体可好？胃口怎么样？”

使者觉得司马懿问的都是些客套话，也就老实回答说：“丞相的确很忙，军营里大小事情都要亲自抓。他起得早，睡得很晚。只是近来胃口不好，吃得很少。”

使者走了以后，司马懿就跟左右将士说：“你们看，诸葛亮吃得少，事务又那么繁重，能支撑得长久吗？”

不出司马懿所料，诸葛亮由于过度辛劳，终于在军营里病倒了。

后主刘禅得到诸葛亮生病的消息，赶快派大臣李福到五丈原来慰问。李福跟诸葛亮谈了一些军国大事，就走了。

过了几天，李福返了回来。他看到诸葛亮病势转重，哭了起来。诸葛亮睁开眼睛，对李福说：“我懂得您回来想问些什么。您所要问的人，我看就是蒋琬吧。”

the consumption of his officers and men. A top general commanding an army in the field at a great distance from the imperial court has no plausible reason to write all the way to the capital to seek permission to go into combat."

Zhuge Liang had understood Sima Yi, and Sima Yi was also trying to figure out Zhuge Liang. On one occasion, when Zhuge Liang sent a messenger to challenge the Wei army for a fight, he was courteously received by Sima Yi, who engaged the messenger in conversation. "Your Counselor-in-chief must be very busy. How is his health? And how is his appetite?"

Believing that these inquiries were made out of politeness, the messenger answered truthfully. "He is indeed very busy because he interests himself in everything, big or small, in the camp. He rises early and goes to bed late. His appetite hasn't been so good lately and he eats little."

After the messenger left, Sima Yi spoke to his staff. "You see! Zhuge Liang eats little and is weighed down by responsibilities. How long do you think he can hold up?"

As predicted by Sima Yi, the overworked Zhuge Liang soon fell ill in his camp.

On learning of Zhuge Liang's illness, Liu Shan the Last Emperor immediately sent his minister Li Fu to Wuzhangyuan to inquire after Zhuge Liang's health. After some discussion of matters of state and the military, Li Fu departed.

A few days later Li Fu returned to the camp for another visit. He cried when he found out that Zhuge Liang's health had deteriorated. Zhuge Liang opened his eyes and said to Li Fu, "I know what you want to know on this second visit. If I'm not mistaken, you want to know about Jiang Wan."

李福说：“丞相说的是。皇上正要我问丞相万一身子不好，由谁来继任您的工作。那末请问寿琬之后，谁可以继任呢？”

诸葛亮说：“可以由费祎（音 yī）接替。”

李福还想再问下去，诸葛亮闭上眼睛不回答了。没几天，这个年纪才五十四岁的丞相终于在军营里去世。

按照诸葛亮生前的嘱咐，蜀军将领没有把他去世的消息透露出去。他们把尸体裹着放在车里，布置各路人马有秩序地撤退。

魏营的探子听到诸葛亮病死的风声，报告司马懿。司马懿立刻带领魏军追赶上去。刚过五丈原，忽然蜀军的旗帜转了方向，一阵战鼓响，兵士们转身掩杀过来。

司马懿大吃一惊，赶快拨转马头，下命令撤退。

蜀军将领等魏军离得远了，不慌不忙地把全部人马安全撤出五丈原。

这件事传到老百姓耳朵里，百姓编个歌谣嘲笑司马懿，说：“死诸葛吓走了活仲达（仲达是司马懿的字）！”

"You are right, Counselor-in-chief," Li Fu replied. "The emperor wants to know who can assume your responsibilities if you become too sick. Besides Jiang Wan, who else do you think would be a good candidate to succeed you?"

"Fei Yi will do," Zhuge Liang told him.

Although Li Fu asked more questions, Zhuge Liang closed his eyes and remained silent. Several days later, the 54-year-old Counselor-in-chief passed away in the camp.

Following his deathbed instructions, the generals of the Shu army kept his death a secret. They kept his body under cover in his carriage and started an orderly withdrawal of all the contingents.

When scouts of the Wei army found out about Zhuge Liang's death, it was reported to Sima Yi, who immediately led his troops in pursuit. Just past Wuzhangyuan, the standards and flags of the Shu army all of a sudden swung around and its soldiers began to charge at Sima Yi's troops, with war drums beating.

Sima Yi was caught by surprise and quickly turned his horse around and ordered a retreat.

While the Wei forces retreated, the generals of the Shu army moved all their troops to safety in an orderly fashion.

The incident prompted the populace to compose a ditty ridiculing Sima Yi. "A dead Zhuge scared away a live Zhongda!" (Zhongda being Sima Yi's style name.)

司马懿听了也不生气，说：“我只能料到活的诸葛，怎么能料到死的呢！”后来，他又亲自跑到蜀军原来扎营的地方，观察了诸葛亮布置的阵势，赞叹说：“诸葛孔明真是天下奇才啊！”

诸葛亮想统一中原的愿望并没有实现，但是他的智慧和品格，一直被后代的人赞扬。在民间传说中，诸葛亮往往成为智慧的化身。在一篇相传是他写的《后出师表》里，有两句话，叫作“鞠躬尽瘁（原文是‘尽力’，后来写成‘尽瘁’，瘁音 cui），死而后已”，人们认为这正是对他一生的评价。

Yet Sima Yi did not take offense at the derision. "I could only go inside the mind of a live Zhuge. How can I be expected to do the same for a dead Zhuge?" When he later visited the Shu army campsite to survey Zhuge Liang's battle organization and fortifications, he was deeply impressed. "Zhuge Liang was truly a rare genius!" He announced.

Although Zhuge Liang failed to achieve his desire of unifying China, his strong character has become legendary. He had also been revered as an incarnation of true wisdom. In the "Latter Chu Shi Biao" (second memorial before a military expedition) attributed to him, he wrote, "I put my nose to the grindstone, not stopping until exhaustion and death," which is considered by many the epitome of his life and character.

15、司马懿装病

诸葛亮死后几年里，蜀汉对魏国只采取守势。魏国的势力强大起来了，但是它的内部却发生了动乱。

魏国的大将司马懿，出身大士族地主。曹操刚刚掌权的时候，曾经征召司马懿出来做官。那时候，司马懿嫌曹操出身低微，不愿意应召，但是又不敢得罪曹操，就假装得了风瘫病。曹操怀疑司马懿有意推托，派了一个刺客深夜闯进司马懿的卧室去察看，果然看到司马懿直挺挺地躺在床上。

刺客还不相信，拔出佩刀，架在司马懿的身上，装出要劈下去的样子。他以为司马懿要不是风瘫，一定会吓得跳起来。司马懿也真有一手，只瞪着眼望了望刺客，身体纹丝儿不动。刺客这才不得不相信，收起刀向曹操回报去了。

司马懿知道曹操不肯放过他。过了一段时间，让人传出消息，说风瘫病已经好了。等曹操再一次召他的时候，他就不拒绝了。

15. Sima Yi Feigns Illness

For several years after Zhuge Liang's death, Shu Han maintained a defensive attitude toward Wei. Yet the growing power of Wei was accompanied by increasing internal unrest.

Sima Yi, one of Wei's top generals, came from a prominent landowning family of mandarins. In the early days of Cao Cao's rule, he had tried to draft Sima Yi into public service. Sima Yi was reluctant to accept an offer from a man of such lowly birth such as Cao Cao, but he didn't want to offend Cao Cao with an outright rebuff. He therefore decided to feign paralysis. Cao Cao suspected that this was simply a ruse and so he sent an assassin to visit Sima Yi's bedroom late one night.

The intruder was greeted by the sight of Sima Yi rigidly stretched out in bed. Unconvinced, he drew his sword and raised it against Sima Yi, making to bring it down on him. He believed that if Sima Yi was only feigning paralysis he would surely jump up in alarm. However, Sima Yi merely stared up at the assassin, his body not making the slightest movement. The assassin was satisfied that the illness was genuine and put away his sword to return to Cao Cao with his finding.

Knowing that Cao Cao would never give up, Sima Yi let some time pass before starting rumor that his paralysis had been cured. When Cao Cao drafted him a second time, he no longer resisted.

司马懿先后在曹操和魏文帝曹丕手下，担任了重要职位。到了魏明帝即位，司马懿已经是魏国的元老。由于他长期带兵在关中跟蜀国打仗，魏国兵权大部分落在他手里。后来，辽东太守公孙渊勾结鲜卑贵族，反叛魏国。魏明帝又调司马懿去对付辽东的叛乱。

司马懿平定了辽东，正要回朝的时候，洛阳派人送来紧急招书，要他迅速赶回洛阳。

司马懿到了洛阳，魏明帝已经病重了。明帝把司马懿和皇族大臣曹爽叫到床边，嘱咐他们共同辅助太子曹芳。

魏明帝死后，太子曹芳即了位，就是魏少帝。曹爽当了大将军，司马懿当了太尉。两人各领兵三千人，轮流在皇宫值班。曹爽虽然说是皇族，但论能力、资格都跟司马懿差得远。开始的时候，他不得不尊重司马懿，有事总听听司马懿的意见。

后来，曹爽手下有一批心腹提醒曹爽说：“大权不能分给外人啊！”他们替曹爽出了一个主意，用魏少帝的名义提升

Sima Yi served in important capacities under both Cao Cao and Cao Pi. By the time of the reign of Emperor Ming, Sima Yi had become an elder statesman of Wei, largely controlling the military thanks to long years spent commanding troops fighting the Shu army in Guanzhong. When Gongsun Yuan, the governor of Liaodong, rebelled against Wei in collusion with the aristocracy of the Xianbei tribe, Emperor Ming sent Sima Yi to put down the rebellion.

When Sima Yi got ready to return to the capital following the pacification of Liaodong, a messenger arrived from Luoyang, bearing an urgent order from the emperor for him to rush back to Luoyang.

When Sima Yi arrived, he found that Emperor Ming's health had taken a turn for the worse. Emperor Ming summoned Sima Yi and Cao Shuang, a minister and member of the royal family, to his bedside to arrange their co-regency of Cao Fang, the crown prince.

Following the death of Emperor Ming, Cao Fang succeeded the throne as Emperor Shao of the Wei dynasty. Cao Shuang was made General-in-chief and Sima Yi became Defender-in-chief, each with a command of three thousand troops which took turns protecting the imperial palace. Although of royal descent, Cao Shuang was dwarfed by Sima Yi in ability and qualities and had to defer to him in the early days of their co-regency.

Yet Cao Shuang was bombarded with advice from his trusted associates, who reminded him that "power cannot be shared with outsiders." They came up with the idea of promoting Sima Yi to Grand Mentor in the name of the

司马懿为太傅，实际上是夺去他的兵权。接着，曹爽又把自己的心腹、兄弟都安排了重要的职位。

曹爽大权在手，就寻欢作乐，过起荒唐的生活来了。为了树立他的威信，他还带兵攻打蜀汉，结果被蜀军打得大败，差点全军覆没。

司马懿表面不说，暗中自有打算。好在他年纪也确实老了，就推说有病，不上朝了。

曹爽听说司马懿生病，正合他的心意。但是毕竟有点不放心，还想打听一下太傅生的是真病还是假病。

有一次，有个曹爽亲信的官员李胜，被派为荆州刺史。李胜临走的时候，到司马懿家去告别。曹爽要他顺便探探情况。

李胜到了司马懿的卧室，只见司马懿躺在床上，旁边两个使唤丫头伺候他吃粥。他没用手接碗，只把嘴凑到碗边喝。没喝上几口，粥就沿着嘴角流了下来，流得胸前衣襟都是。李胜在一边看了，觉得司马懿病得实在可怜。

李胜对司马懿说：“这次蒙皇上恩典，派我担任本州刺史（李胜是荆州人，所以说是本州），特地来向太傅告辞。”

司马懿喘着气说：“哦，这真委屈您啦，并州在北方，接近胡人，您要好好防备啊。我病得这样，只怕以后见不到您啦！”

emperor with the intended effect of taking away his control of the army. Cao Shuang followed their advise and then put his close associates and brothers into positions of power.

When he had succeeded in concentrating power in his hands, Cao Shuang began a life of hedonistic pleasures. To establish his authority he led a force against Shu Han but was routed by the Shu army, nearly losing his entire expeditionary party.

Meanwhile, Sima Yi was privately making plans. His advanced age also gave him a handy pretext to excuse himself from the daily imperial audiences on account of ill health.

The news of Sima Yi's illness suited Cao Shuang perfectly. However, to have total peace of mind he needed to find out whether the Grand Mentor was really ill or merely faking it.

When Cao Shuang's trusted subordinate, Li Sheng, was appointed governor of Jingzhou and planned a visit to Sima Yi before departing for his new post, Cao Shuang gave him the task of finding out about the real state of Sima Yi's health.

When Li Sheng was ushered into Sima Yi's bedroom, he saw him lying in bed, being fed porridge by two servants. A few dribbles of gruel were dripping out of the corner of his mouth, wetting the front of his clothing. This sight made Li Sheng feel deeply sorry for Sima Yi.

"By the grace of the emperor, I've been appointed governor of my home region and I've come to bid farewell to the Grand Mentor." He said to Sima Yi.

"Oh, what a difficult mission," Sima Yi replied as he gasped for air. "Bingzhou in the north is very close to the northern Hu tribe. You must be on your guard. I'm very sick and I'm afraid this may be our last meeting."

李胜说：“太傅听错了，我是回荆州去，不是到并州。”

司马懿还是听不清，李胜又大声说了一遍，司马懿总算有点搞清楚了，说：“我实在年纪老，耳朵聋，听不清您的话，您做荆州刺史，这太好了。”

李胜告辞出来，向曹爽一五一十地说了一遍，说：“太傅只差一口气了，您就用不着担心了。”

曹爽听了，不用提有多高兴啦。

公元249年新年，魏少帝曹芳到城外去祭扫祖先的陵墓，曹爽和他的兄弟、亲信大臣全跟了去，司马懿既然病得厉害，当然也没有人请他去。

哪儿知道等曹爽一帮子人一出皇城，太傅司马懿的病全好了。他披戴起盔甲，抖擞精神，带着他两个儿子司马师、司马昭，率领兵马占领了城门和兵库，并且假传皇太后的诏令，把曹爽的大将军职务撤了。

"The Grand Mentor didn't hear me right. I said I'm going back to my home region of Jingzhou, not Bingzhou." Li Sheng said.

Sima Yi still didn't catch the name, prompting Li Sheng to repeat it at a louder register. Sima Yi finally had some idea of what was being said. "I'm old and hard of hearing so I didn't hear you correctly at first. It's wonderful that you've been made governor of Jingzhou!"

After taking leave of Sima Yi, Li Sheng made a full report to Cao Shuang. "The Grand Mentor is one breath away from death. You don't need to worry about him."

This put Cao Shuang in an excellent mood.

On the occasion of the spring festival in 249 AD, Cao Fang, Emperor Shao of the Wei dynasty, left the city to offer sacrifices at his ancestral tombs. Cao Shuang, his brothers and ministers loyal to him also attended. No one invited Sima Yi on account of his grave illness.

Yet no sooner had Cao Shuang and his cohorts left the imperial compound than Sima Yi had a complete recovery. In an exuberant mood, he donned his armor and, with his two sons Sima Shi and Sima Zhao in tow, led his troops to take control of the city gates and the armory. He also stripped Cao Shuang of all functions pertaining to his position of General-in-chief by faking an edict from the empress dowager.

曹爽和他的兄弟在城外得知消息，急得乱成一团。有人给他献计，要他挟持少帝退到许都，收集人马，对抗司马懿。但是曹爽和他的兄弟都是只知道吃喝玩乐的人，哪儿有这个胆量。司马懿派人去劝他投降，说是只要交出兵权，决不为难他们。曹爽就乖乖地投降了。

过了几天，就有人告发曹爽一伙谋反，司马懿派人把曹爽一伙人全下了监狱处死。

这样一来，魏国的政权名义上还是曹氏的，实际上已经转到司马氏手里。

When the news reached Cao Shuang and his brothers outside the city, they were thrown into great consternation. Some suggested that he flee to Xudu with the emperor as hostage and assemble a force to confront Sima Yi. But Cao Shuang and his brothers had no stomach for such a daring enterprise. When Sima Yi sent an envoy to urge him to surrender, promising lenient treatment as long as he handed over his control of the army, Cao Shuang promptly submitted.

A few days later, Sima Yi received denunciations of seditious plans made by Cao Shuang and his associates. They were therefore thrown in jail and soon executed.

While the Wei regime remained nominally in the hands of the Caos, real power was now exercised by the Simas.

16、司马昭的野心

司马懿杀了曹爽，过了两年，他也死了。接着他职位的是他儿子司马师。魏国大权落在司马师和司马昭兄弟两人手里。大臣中谁反对他们，司马师就把他除掉。魏少帝曹芳恨透司马师。有人曾经劝曹芳撤掉司马氏兄弟的兵权。但没有等曹芳动手，司马师已经逼着皇太后，把曹芳废了，另立魏文帝曹丕的一个孙子曹髦。

魏国有些地方将领本来不服司马氏的专权，司马师废去曹芳后，就有扬州刺史文钦和镇东将军毌丘（毌丘，姓，拼音guàn）儉起兵声讨司马师。司马师亲自带兵征讨，打败了文钦和毌丘儉。但是在回师许都之后，司马师也得病死了。

接着，司马昭做了大将军。司马氏父子三人，一个比一个厉害，一个比一个专横。

魏帝曹髦实在忍耐不住了。有一天，他把尚书王经等三个大臣召进宫里，气愤地说：“司马昭之心，路人皆知，我不能坐着等着他来收拾我。今天，我要同你们一起去讨伐他。”

16. The Ambitions of Sima Zhao

Two years after he killed Cao Shuang, Sima Yi died and was succeeded by his son, Sima Shi. Power in the kingdom of Wei was now firmly in the hands of the brothers Sima Shi and Sima Zhao. Any minister who stood in their way would be swiftly eliminated. Emperor Shao had the utmost hatred for Sima Shi, and had been urged to strip the two Sima brothers of their authority over the army. Yet before the emperor could do this, Sima Shi forced the empress dowager to depose Cao Fang and put Cao Mao, a grandson of Emperor Wen, on the throne instead.

Generals in some parts of Wei resented the Simas, and the removal of Cao Fang from the throne was the last straw. Wen Qin, the governor of Yangzhou, and General Guanqiu Jian raised arms against Sima Shi but were defeated. However, Sima Shi fell ill and died after returning with his troops to Xudu.

When Sima Zhao took over as General-in-chief he proved no less an autocrat and bully than his father and brother.

Cao Mao, the new emperor, found his tolerance stretched to breaking point. One day he summoned three ministers, including Wang Jing, the Imperial Secretary, to the court. "The ambitions of Sima Zhao are evident even to the people in the streets. I can't just sit here and wait for him to deal with me. With your assistance, I want to take action against him now."

大臣们知道要跟司马昭作对，简直是鸡蛋碰石头，就劝他忍耐，不要闹出大祸来。

可是曹髦从怀里掏出一道预先写好的诏书，扔在地上，说：“我已经下了决心，就是拼个死也不怕，再说还不一定死呢。”说着，他进内宫去禀报太后。

哪里知道这三个大臣当中，倒有两个人偷偷溜出去向司马昭通风报信了。

二十岁的曹髦，根本不懂得怎样治司马昭。他集合了宫内的禁卫军和侍从太监，吵吵嚷嚷地从宫里杀了出来。曹髦自己拿了一口宝剑，站在车上指挥。

司马昭的心腹贾充，带了一队兵士赶来，挡住了禁卫军的去路。双方打了起来。曹髦上前大喝一声，挥动剑杀过去。贾充的手下兵士一见皇帝自己动手，毕竟有点胆怯，有的准备逃了。

贾充手下有个叫成济的，跟贾充说：“您看怎么办？”

贾充厉声说：“司马公平时养着你们是干什么的！还用问吗？”

贾充这一说，成济才胆大了，拿起长矛就往曹髦身上直刺去。曹髦来不及招架，被成济刺穿了胸膛，跌下车来死了。

消息传到司马昭那里。司马昭听说他手下人真的杀了皇帝，也有点着慌，连忙赶到朝堂上，召集大臣们商量。司马

Knowing that crossing Sima Zhao was akin to pitching an egg against a rock, the ministers advised patience and caution in order to avert disaster.

Cao Mao took out an edict he had prepared and threw it on the floor. "I've made up my mind. I'll do it at the risk of death. Besides, I may yet come out alive." With those words, he went to inform the empress dowager of his plans.

Little did he know that two of the three ministers sneaked out to tip off Sima Zhao.

Cao Mao was only twenty years old, and had absolutely no idea of how to deal with Sima Zhao. He assembled the imperial guards and eunuchs, and the party headed forth from the palace with Cao Mao, wielding a sword, giving orders from his carriage.

Sima Zhao's trusted aide Jia Chong arrived with his troops to block the advance of the imperial guard. As the two parties scuffled, Cao Mao let out a sudden cry and charged into the fray with his sword raised. When the Jia Chong's soldiers saw the emperor coming at them, they were understandably intimidated and unsure what to do.

Jia Chong's subordinate Cheng Ji asked, "What do you think we should do?"

"What has Sima Zhao paid you for? You know what to do!" Jia Chong replied sternly.

This emboldened Cheng Ji to lunge at Cao Mao with his lance. Caught by surprise, Cao Mao was stabbed in the chest and died almost instantly.

When news reached Sima Zhao that his people had killed the emperor, he rushed to the Imperial hall to summon the

昭假惺惺装出悲伤的样子，跟一位老臣陈泰说：“您说，叫我怎么办呢？”

陈泰说：“只有斩了贾充的头，才多少可以向天下交账。”

司马昭很为难地说：“还有没有其他办法，您再想想。”

陈泰说：“依我说，只有比这更重的办法，没有再轻的了。”

后来，司马昭用太后名义下了一道诏书，给曹髦加上许多罪状，把他废作平民，把曹髦被杀的事轻轻掩盖过去。

但是，大伙儿还是议论纷纷，怪司马昭不办凶手的罪，司马昭没法拖下去，就把杀害皇帝的罪责一古脑儿推给成济，给成济定了一个大逆不道的罪，满门抄斩。

司马昭除掉了曹髦，另外从曹操的后代中找了一个十五岁的曹奂接替皇位，这就是魏元帝。

ministers for consultation. "Tell me! What shall I do?" He asked them.

"To appease the country, we will have to execute Jia Chong," Chen Tai said.

Sima Zhao found this idea unpalatable. "Is there any alternative?"

"In my view, this is the smallest price to pay," Chen Tai replied.

Eventually, Sima Zhao issued, in the name of the empress dowager, an edict posthumously reducing Cao Mao to a commoner on account of his numerous crimes, glossing over the circumstances of his death.

Yet as public opinion began to turn against him for letting the killer off the hook, Sima Zhao knew he could not afford to hesitate any longer. He made a scapegoat of Cheng Ji, who was made to shoulder sole responsibility for the murder of the emperor, a crime that was punished by the wholesale execution of his entire clan.

With Cao Mao out of the way, Sima Zhao found from among Cao Cao's descendants a 15-year-old named Cao Huan to succeed the throne as Emperor Yuan.

17、邓艾偷渡剑阁

司马昭害死了魏帝曹髦，认为内部已经稳定，决心大举进攻蜀汉。

那时候，接替诸葛亮的大臣蒋琬、费祎都已死去，蜀汉担任大将军的是姜维。姜维有心继承诸葛亮的北伐事业，几乎每年都出兵攻打魏国，但是蜀汉的力量已经越来越弱，姜维不但不能够取得胜利，反而白白消耗了不少兵力。

公元263年，司马昭派将军邓艾、诸葛绪各带兵三万，钟会带兵十几万分三路进攻蜀汉。

姜维看到魏军声势浩大，知道抵挡不了，把蜀兵集中到剑阁（今四川剑阁县），守住关口要道。钟会带兵到了剑阁，一时没法攻进去。

邓艾看到蜀军主力守在剑阁，就带了精兵偷偷绕道到剑阁西面的一条羊肠小道上向南进军。这一带本来是人迹不到

17. Deng Ai Sneaks through Jian'ge

After engineering the death of Cao Mao, Sima Zhao no longer had to worry about internal unrest. He therefore decided to launch a massive campaign against Shu Han.

By that time both Jiang Wan and Fei Yi, who had succeeded Zhuge Liang, had died. The General-in-chief of Shu, Jiang Wei, committed to the continuation of Zhuge Liang's northern expeditions, launched nearly yearly raids against Wei. However, instead of winning any battle, Jiang Wei succeeded only in squandering his combat resources in these exercises in futility.

In 263 AD, Sima Zhao launched a three-pronged attack against Shu Han. This was led by his generals Deng Ai and Zhuge Xu, each commanding a force of thirty thousand, and Zhong Hui, commanding a force of over one hundred thousand.

Recognizing his inability to resist such an overwhelming force, Jiang Wei concentrated his troops in Jian'ge (today's Jian'ge County in Sichuan) in order to defend the strategic pass. This when Zhong Hui's forces reached Jian'ge, his advance was temporarily blocked.

After finding out that the bulk of the Shu forces were deployed to defend Jian'ge, Deng Ai used a narrow footpath to sneak to the west of Jian'ge with an elite group of troops, before

的地方。邓艾带领这支精兵，逢山开路，遇河架桥，走了七百里路，也没有被蜀军发现。

最后，他们来到一条绝路上，山高谷深，没法前进。这时候，邓艾的兵士随身带的粮草已经快完了，将士们都慌了神。

邓艾当机立断，用毡毯裹着身子，从悬崖峭壁上滚了下去。将士们见邓艾一带头，也跟着滚了下去。有的攀着树木，一个接一个慢慢地爬下了山，终于越过了这条绝路，一直赶到江油（今四川江油县）。

驻守江油的蜀军没想到邓艾会从背后杀出来，突然见到魏兵出现在城下，来不及组织抵抗，只好投降了。

邓艾继续向绵竹（今四川绵阳西南）进攻。守绵竹的是诸葛亮的儿子诸葛瞻。邓艾派人送信劝说他投降，说：“如果你肯投降，就推荐你为琅琊王。”

诸葛瞻听说要他投降，气得火冒三丈，把邓艾派来劝降的使者杀了。他摆开阵势，决心和邓艾拼个死活。但是毕竟敌不过邓艾，诸葛瞻和他的儿子诸葛尚都战死了。

邓艾拿下绵竹，直奔蜀汉都城成都。成都的百姓做梦也

moving south. This elite band of soldiers traveled through territory where no human foot had previously trod, and had to blaze trails through mountains and build bridges to cross rivers. For more than 200 miles they advanced undetected by the Shu army.

Their progress was blocked when they came to a sheer cliff overlooking an abyss. Furthermore, they were also running out of rations. The officers began to panic.

In a bold, decisive act, Deng Ai wrapped himself in a blanket and tumbled down the steep slope. Deng Ai's officers and men followed his lead and went down the steep side of the abyss. Some carefully climbed down by grabbing onto tree trunks and branches. They were finally able to overcome the barrier to reach Jiangyou (today's Jiangyou County in Sichuan).

The Shu troops stationed in Jiangyou were caught by complete surprise by Deng Ai's attack. When the Wei troops appeared out of nowhere, the city defenders were unable to organize a timely resistance and soon capitulated.

Deng Ai pressed the attack toward Mianzhu (southwest of today's Mianyang in Sichuan), whose defenses were being manned by Zhuge Liang's son, Zhuge Dan. Deng Ai sent Zhuge Dan a letter urging him to surrender. "If you surrender, I will recommend to my emperor to create you Prince of Langya."

Enraged by this offer, Zhuge Dan had Deng Ai's messenger killed. He drew up his troops and prepared for a fight to the finish. No match for Deng Ai, both Zhuge Dan and his son, Zhuge Shang, were killed in combat.

After the capture of Mianzhu, Deng Ai raced toward

没想到魏兵来得那么快，一听邓艾兵临城下，纷纷到山上树林里去避难。蜀汉朝廷更是乱成一团，后主赶快召集大臣商榷。有人主张往南逃，有的主张投靠东吴，有人认为现在魏国大军压境，不如趁早投降。

后主是个没主意又胆小的人，根本不想抵抗。等邓艾大军到达成都，他已经叫人反绑着两手，率领文武百官出城门投降了。

邓艾进了成都，觉得自己了不起，骄傲起来，连钟会也不在他眼里。他直接向司马昭上书，要趁这次打胜仗的势头，一鼓作气把东吴灭掉。哪儿知道司马昭下个命令给邓艾，说：“军事行动不许自作主张。”这件事把邓艾气得要命。

正在剑阁跟钟会对抗的蜀将姜维，得到邓艾袭击成都的消息，正想退回去保卫成都，接到后主的命令，要他向魏军投降。

蜀军将士接到这个命令，又气愤又伤心。有的兵士恨得拔出刀来，在大石头上乱砍。

Chengdu, the capital of Shu Han. The populace of Chengdu could not believe the speed with which the Wei army arrived at the capital, and they ran into the hills and forests for refuge. The court of Shu Han was in disarray, and the Last Emperor summoned his ministers for urgent consultation. Some suggested that the court move south; some advocated seeking protection from Wu of Jiangdong; while others believed it would be wiser to submit without delay in the face of the overwhelming Wei force.

The Last Emperor of Shu Han was an indecisive man, but he had no wish to offer any resistance. When the force led by Deng Ai arrived at Chengdu, the Shu emperor had his arms voluntarily trussed behind him and left the city gate with his entire court to offer their surrender.

After he moved into the city with his troops, Deng Ai became so arrogant that he decided to bypass Zhong Hui to write directly to Sima Zhao with a proposal to attempt to conquer Wu of Jiangdong by pressing the new military advantage. To his great chagrin, Sima Zhao issued an order to Deng Ai. "You cannot initiate any military action without authorization from your superiors."

The Shu general Jiang Wei was in the midst of battling Zhong Hui's troops when he learned of Deng Ai's attack on Chengdu. When he got ready to redeploy his troops to rescue Chengdu, an order arrived from the emperor instructing him to surrender to the Wei force.

This order provoked indignation and sadness among the Shu officers and men, some of whom drew their swords and struck at the rocks about them in their agitation.

姜维倒是十分冷静。他跟将士们一合计，决定向钟会投降。钟会也赏识姜维是个好汉，把他当作自己人一样看待。两个人出门一块坐车，回到军营一起议事，要好得简直拆不开。

姜维利用钟会和邓艾之间的矛盾，劝钟会秘密写信给司马昭，告发邓艾谋反。

司马昭本来猜忌心很重，接到钟会的报告，就用魏元帝的名义下道诏书，派人到成都把邓艾抓起来，用囚车押回洛阳。他怕邓艾抗拒，又命令钟会进军成都。

钟会到了成都，派一支人马用囚车把邓艾押到洛阳。半路上，邓艾被人杀了。钟会用计除掉了邓艾以后，兵权全掌握在他一个人手里，他就决定谋反了。

钟会跟姜维一商量，姜维完全赞同他。因为姜维另外有他自己的打算，他想利用钟会杀掉魏军将领，然后再除掉钟会。他偷偷地给刘禅送了一封信，说：“请陛下再忍受几天委屈，臣一定把国家恢复过来。”

Yet Jiang Wei remained calm. Following consultation with his men, the decision was made to surrender. Zhong Hui appreciated Jiang Wei's skills, and treated him as a friend; they often rode about in the same carriage and conversed about military matters together.

Playing on the frictions between Zhong Hui and Deng Ai, Jiang Wei persuaded Zhong Hui to write secretly to Sima Zhao accusing Deng Ai of plotting a rebellion.

When Sima Zhao received the Zhong Hui's letter of accusation he issued an edict in the name of Emperor Yuan to order that Deng Ai be arrested in Chengdu and taken back to Luoyang in a pillory cart. To preempt any resistance on Deng Ai's part, he ordered Zhong Hui to move his troops into Chengdu.

Once in Chengdu, Zhong Hui had a contingent of troops take Deng Ai to Luoyang. Deng Ai met his death on the way to the capital. After engineering the elimination of Deng Ai, Zhong Hui had gained total control of the army, and began plotting a rebellion in earnest.

Zhong Hui discussed his idea with Jiang Wei, who enthusiastically supported it. However, Jiang Wei had his own hidden agenda: he wanted to let Zhong Hui eliminate the top military brass of Wei, and then do away with Zhong Hui himself. He therefore secretly wrote to Liu Shan. "I ask his Majesty to be patient for a few days more. I will revive the country."

钟会哪儿知道姜维的打算，他以为姜维真心跟他合伙反司马昭。他假传太后的命令，说司马昭杀害魏元帝，叫他发兵讨伐。他怕魏军将领不服，把他们软禁在蜀宫里。

魏军将士对钟会的命令本来有点怀疑，后来，有人传出谣言，说钟会、姜维要把北方来的将士杀光。这一来，大家都乱了起来。有的在宫殿四周放了火。乱兵进了宫，姜维、钟会控制不住，都被乱兵杀了。

Zhong Hui, meanwhile, took it for granted that Jiang Wei was a sincere ally. He issued an order, allegedly from the empress dowager, that instructed him to lead an expedition against Sima Zhao. To preempt any opposition from the generals, he had them placed under house arrest inside the palace grounds.

The Wei military had doubts about the authenticity of the order from the beginning. Rumor soon circulated that Zhong Hui and Jiang Wei were planning a wholesale slaughter of all the officers and men from the north. This provoked a disturbance in which fires were set on the periphery of the palace and leaderless soldiers surged into the palace compound. Jiang Wei and Zhong Hui were both killed by the riotous soldiers as the situation spun out of control.

18、阿斗乐不思蜀

邓艾灭了蜀汉以后，后主刘禅还留在成都。到了钟会，姜维发动兵变，司马昭觉得让后主留在成都总不大妥当，就派他的心腹贾充把刘禅接到洛阳。

刘禅本来是一个昏庸无能的人，诸葛亮在世的时候，全靠诸葛亮掌管着军政大事，他也不敢自作主张。诸葛亮死后，虽然还有蒋琬、费祎、姜维一些文武大臣辅佐他，可是他毕竟不像诸葛亮在世时候那么谨慎了。到蒋琬、费祎死去后，宦官黄皓得了势，蜀汉的政治就越来越糟了。

到了蜀汉灭亡，姜维被杀，大臣们死的死了，走的走了。随同他一起到洛阳去的只有地位比较低的官员郤（音xì）正和刘通两个人。刘禅不懂事，不知道怎样跟人打交道，一举

18. Adou Revels in a Foreign Court and Forgets his Home Country

After Shu Han was extinguished in the wake of Deng Ai's attack, the Last Emperor Liu Shan (infant name: Adou) stayed in Chengdu. In the aftermath of the rebellion of Zhong Hui and Jiang Wei, Sima Zhao came to question the wisdom of allowing the Last Emperor to stay so far away, so he sent his trusted associate Jia Chong to bring Liu Shan to Luoyang.

Liu Shan had always been an incompetent leader. When Zhuge Liang was alive, he left all military, administrative and political decisions to Zhuge Liang because he did not trust his own judgment. Although he was able to rely on top aides (notably Jiang Wan, Fei Yi and Jiang Wei) to assist him, after Zhuge Liang's death, he was not as careful as when Zhuge Liang had been around. Following the death of Fei Yi and Jiang Wei, and with the eunuch Huang Hao wielding increasing power, the political situation was becoming increasingly unsteady.

Following the downfall of Shu Han, Jiang Wei was killed and the other ministers either died or abandoned the court, leaving only two low-ranking officials, Xi Zheng and Liu Tong, to accompany the emperor to Luoyang. Unfamiliar with the ways of the world, Liu Shan depended on Xi Zheng's guidance down to the smallest detail. Until now, Liu Shan had not

一动全靠郤正指点。平时，刘禅根本没把郤正放在眼里，到这时候，他才觉得郤正是个忠心耿耿的人。

刘禅到了洛阳，司马昭用魏元帝的名义，封他为安乐公，还把他的子孙和原来蜀汉的大臣五十多人封了侯。司马昭这样做，无非是为了笼络人心，稳住对蜀汉地区的统治。但是在刘禅看来，却是很大的恩典了。

有一次，司马昭大摆酒宴，请刘禅和原来蜀汉的大臣参加。宴会中间，还特地叫了一班歌女演出蜀地的歌舞。

一些蜀汉的大臣看了这些歌舞，想起了亡国的痛苦，伤心得差点儿掉下眼泪。只有刘禅咧开嘴看得挺有劲，就像在他自己的宫里一样。

司马昭观察了他的神情，宴会后，对贾充说：“刘禅这个人没有心肝到了这步田地，即使诸葛亮活到现在，恐怕也没法使蜀汉维持下去，何况是姜维呢！”

过了几天，司马昭在接见刘禅的时候，问刘禅说：“您还想念蜀地吗？”

刘禅乐呵呵地回答说：“这儿挺快活，我不想念蜀地了。”（“乐不思蜀”的成语就是这样来的。）

郤正在旁边听了，觉得太不像话。回到刘禅的府里，郤正

thought much of Xi Zheng but in the new circumstances, he came to see Xi Zheng as a loyal aide.

When Liu Shan arrived in Luoyang, Sima Zhao made him Duke of Anle and conferred the title of marquis on his progeny as well as on more than fifty ex-ministers of Shu Han. Sima Zhao did all this to win hearts and minds, thereby consolidating his authority over the old dominion of the now-defunct Shu Han. However, Liu Shan considered it the greatest honor.

Sima Zhao gave a lavish banquet for Liu Shan and his former ministers. A troupe of singing girls was brought in to perform songs and dances originating from Shu country.

These songs and dances from their home country were, to some former Shu ministers, a painful reminder of the tragic loss of their country and brought them to the brink of tears. Liu Shan meanwhile, in sharp contrast, was so absorbed by the performance that his jaw dropped, seemingly oblivious of the fact that he was in a foreign court.

This did not escape the notice of Sima Zhao. "Liu Shan is really a heartless creature. Shu Han would not have survived even if Zhuge Liang, a counselor of much higher caliber than Jiang Wei, had been alive and had done his best to help him." He said to Jia Chong after the banquet.

When Liu Shan was received a few days later by Sima Zhao, he asked him, "Do you still feel nostalgia for Shu?"

"I am quite happy here," Liu Shan replied contentedly. "No, I don't miss Shu anymore." (This is the origin of the Chinese phrase "*le bu si shu*," literally "so happy one no longer yearns for his home country Shu".)

Xi Zheng, who was present at the meeting, was outraged

说：“您不该这样回答晋王（指司马昭）。”

刘禅说：“依你的意思该怎么说呢？”

郤正说：“以后如果晋王再问起您，您应该流着眼泪说：我祖上的坟墓都在蜀地，我心里很难过，没有一天不想那边。这样说，也许晋王还会放我们回去。”

刘禅点点头说：“你说得很对，我记住就是了。”

后来，司马昭果然又问起刘禅，说：“我们这儿待您不错，您还想念蜀地吗？”

刘禅想起郤正的话，就把郤正教他的话原原本本背了一遍。他竭力装出悲伤的样子，但是挤不出眼泪，只好闭上眼睛。

司马昭看了他这个模样，心里早明白了一大半，笑着说：“这话好像是郤正说的啊！”

刘禅吃惊地睁开眼睛，傻里傻气地望着司马昭说：“对，对，正是郤正教我的。”

司马昭不由得笑了，左右侍从也忍不住笑出声来。

司马昭这才看清楚刘禅的确是个糊涂人，不会对自己造成威胁，就没有想杀害他。

刘禅的昏庸无能历史上出了名，后来，人们常用“扶不起的阿斗”比喻那种懦弱无能，没法使他振作的人。

by Liu Shan's reply. When they returned to Liu Shan's residence, Xi Zheng said, "You should not have answered the way you did to the question of the Sima Zhao."

"How do you think I should have answered?" Liu Shan asked.

"If he asks the same question again, you should say with tears in your eyes: my ancestral tombs are in Shu; I have a heavy heart and I miss my home country all the time. We may then have a chance to be allowed to go home." Xi Zheng replied.

Liu Shan nodded his approval. "You are right. I will remember that."

On another occasion Sima Zhao did ask Liu Shan the same question again. "You seem to be enjoying our warm hospitality here. Do you still miss your home country?"

Remembering what Xi Zheng had coached him to say, Liu Shan regurgitated it word for word. He tried to put on a sad face, but the tears simply wouldn't come, so he had to keep his eyes closed.

Observing Liu Shan's effort, Sima Zhao guessed what had happened. "This sounds like Xi Zheng speaking."

Liu Shan reopened his eyes with a start and admitted as much. "You are right! You are right! It is Xi Zheng who coached me to give this reply."

Sima Zhao couldn't help burst out laughing, as did the attendants.

This convinced Sima Zhao that the addle-brained Liu Shan posed no threat to him and therefore he saw no need to eliminate him.

People have since used the expression "Adou the Unhelpable" to describe someone who is hopelessly faint-hearted and incompetent.

19、石崇王恺比富

司马昭灭了蜀汉之后，还没有来得及攻东吴，就病死了。他的儿子司马炎把挂名的魏元帝曹奂废了，自己做了皇帝，建立了晋朝，这就是晋武帝。从公元265年到316年，晋朝的国都在洛阳，历史上把这个朝代称为西晋。

西晋建立的时候，三国中唯一留下来的东吴早已衰落了。公元279年，晋武帝发兵二十多万，分几路进攻东吴国都建业（今江苏南京市）。东吴最后一个皇帝孙皓山穷水尽，自己脱下上衣，让人反绑了双手，带领一批东吴大臣，到王濬的军营前投降。

这样，从曹丕称帝（公元220年）开始的三国分立时期宣告结束，晋朝统一了全国。

晋武帝统一全国后，志满意得，完全沉湎在荒淫生活里。在他带头提倡下，朝廷里的大臣把摆阔气当作体面的事。

19. Shi Chong and Wang Kai in a Wealth Contest

Before he had time to launch an attack against Wu of Jiangdong following his conquest of Shu Han, Sima Zhao fell ill and died. His son, Sima Yan, deposed the nominal emperor Cao Huan, and declared himself emperor of Jin, a new dynasty. He gave himself the title of Emperor Wu of Jin. From 265 to 316 AD, the Jin dynasty had its capital at Luoyang and is therefore historically known as the Western Jin.

Long before the founding of the Western Jin dynasty, Wu of Jiangdong, the only kingdom remaining from the Three Kingdoms period, had begun to decline. In 279 AD, Emperor Wu of Jin launched an attack on the Wu capital Jianye (today's Nanjing in Jiangsu) with a 200,000-strong force. The last emperor of Wu, Sun Huo, with his back against the wall and all options closed, bared his upper torso and had his arms trussed behind him in order to surrender to Wang Jun.

This marked the end of the Three Kingdoms period, which began with Cao Pi's accession to the throne in 220 AD. The country was thus reunified under the Jin dynasty.

After unifying the country, Emperor Wu became complacent and turned his attentions instead to wealth and pleasure. Following his example, the high officials of the court vied to enhance their prestige by flaunting the trappings of wealth.

在京都洛阳，当时有三个出名的大富豪：一个是掌管禁卫军的中护军羊琇，一个是晋武帝的舅父、后将军王恺，还有一个是散骑常侍石崇。

羊琇、王恺都是外戚，他们的权势比石崇来得大，但是在豪富方面却比不上石崇。石崇的钱到底有多少，谁也说不清。这许多钱是哪儿来的呢？原来石崇当过几年荆州刺史，在这期间，他除了加紧搜刮民脂民膏之外，还干过肮脏的抢劫勾当。有些外国的使臣或商人经过荆州地面，石崇就派部下敲诈勒索，甚至像江洋大盗一样，公开杀人劫货。这样，他就掠夺了无数的钱财、珠宝，成了当时最大的富豪。

石崇到了洛阳，一听说王恺的豪富很出名，有心跟他比一比。他听说王恺家里洗锅子用饴（音yí）糖水，就命令他家厨房用蜡烛当柴火烧。这件事一传开，人家都说石崇家比王恺家阔气。

王恺为了炫耀自己富，又在他家门前的大路两旁，夹道四十里，用紫丝编成屏障。谁要上王恺家，都要经过这四十里紫丝屏障。这个奢华的装饰，把洛阳城震动了。

石崇存心压倒王恺。他用比紫丝贵重的彩缎，铺设了五十里屏障，比王恺的屏障更长，更豪华。

In the imperial capital of Luoyang, the three richest men were Yang Xiu (the Capital Protector), Wang Kai (the emperor's uncle and General of the Rear), and Shi Chong (the Cavalier Attendant in ordinary).

Yang Xiu and Wang Kai were related to the royal house by marriage and possessed greater power than Shi Chong. However, Shi Chong was far richer than they were, and no one could put an exact figure on Shi Chong's wealth. He had amassed his vast wealth during his tenure as governor of Jingzhou, where he was renowned for his corruption. When foreign legations or merchants passed through Jingzhou, Shi Chong would send his henchmen to extort money from them or even to openly rob and kill them. He had therefore become the richest man of the realm.

Upon his arrival in Luoyang, Shi Chong heard of Wang Kai's impressive wealth. To put Wang Kai's wealth to shame he instructed his culinary staff to use candles in lieu of firewood because he had heard that Wang Kai's household used sweetwater from maltose to wash pots and pans. Thus a wealth contest began between Shi Chong and Wang Kai.

Wang Kai responded by commissioning the construction of a twelve-mile-long stretch of screens made of purple silk along both sides of the road leading to his house. Anyone visiting the Wang residence would have to pass between these twenty miles of screens. This lavish fencework created a sensation in Luoyang.

Not to be outdone, Shi Chong used more expensive and more elegant satin to construct screens that extended for sixteen miles before his own home.

王恺又输了一着。但是他还不甘心罢休，向他的外甥晋武帝请求帮忙。晋武帝觉得这样的比赛挺有趣，就把宫里收藏的一株两尺多高的珊瑚树赐给王恺，好让王恺在众人面前夸耀一番。

有了皇帝帮忙，王恺比阔气的劲头更大了。他特地请石崇和一批官员上他家吃饭。

宴席上，王恺得意地对大家说：“我家有一件罕见的珊瑚，请大家观赏一番怎么样？”

大家当然都想看一看。王恺命令侍女把珊瑚树捧了出来。那株珊瑚有两尺高，长得枝条匀称，色泽粉红鲜艳。大家看了赞不绝口，都说真是一件罕见的宝贝。

只有石崇在一边冷笑。他看到案头正好有一支铁如意（一种器物），顺手抓起，朝着大珊瑚树正中，轻轻一砸。“克朗”一声，一株珊瑚被砸得粉碎。

周围的官员们都大惊失色。主人王恺更是满脸通红，气急败坏地责问石崇：“你……你这是干什么！”

石崇嬉皮笑脸地说：“您用不着生气，我还您就是了。”

王恺又是痛心，又是生气，连声说：“好，好，你还我来。”

石崇立刻叫他的随从回家去，把他家的珊瑚树统统搬来让王恺挑选。

不一会，一群随从回来，搬来了几十株珊瑚树。这些珊瑚中，三四尺高的就有六七株，大的竟比王恺的高出一倍。株株枝条挺拔秀，光彩夺目。至于像王恺家那样的珊瑚，那就更多了。

Wang Kai, however, refused to concede defeat. He sought the help of his nephew, Emperor Wu of Jin. Intrigued by the contest, the emperor gave a two-foot-tall coral tree in his imperial collection to Wang Kai, so that the latter could show it off to the public.

The emperor's help gave a boost to Wang Kai's determination to continue the contest. He then invited Shi Chong and a large number of officials to a dinner at his home.

At the banquet, Wang Kai announced with glowing pride, "I have a rare coral tree in my house. Do you want to have a look?"

Wang Kai had a maid bring out the coral tree, which had symmetrical branches and bright, pink flowers. His impressed guests lavished praise on the rare plant.

Yet Shi Chong simply looked on with a sneering expression. Seeing an iron ruyi (ornamental back-scratcher) on the table, he grabbed it and lightly tapped the coral tree with it. With a loud crash, the coral tree shattered into tiny pieces.

The invited officials were stupefied and Wang Kai's face turned red with anger. "What on earth are you doing?"

"Don't be so upset. I'll give you another one." Shi Chong replied.

"Yes, give me another one! Give me another one then!" Wang Kai shouted.

Shi Chong sent his attendant home to fetch all the coral trees in his collection for Wang Kai to choose from.

A group of attendants returned with dozens of coral trees, including six or seven that were three to four feet tall, every one of them elegantly shaped and brightly colored.

周围的人都看呆了。王恺这才知道石崇家的财富，比他不知多出多少倍，也只好认输。

这场比阔气的闹剧就这样结束了。石崇的豪富就在洛阳出了名。当时有一个大臣傅咸，上了一道奏章给晋武帝。他说，这种严重的奢侈浪费，比天灾还要严重。现在这样比阔气，比奢侈，不但不被责罚，反而被认为是荣耀的事。这样下去怎么了得。

晋武帝看了奏章，根本不理睬。他跟石崇、王恺一样，一面加紧搜刮，一面穷奢极侈。西晋王朝一开始就这样腐败，这就注定要发生大乱了。

All those present were dazzled by the display. Wang Kai conceded defeat, finally realizing that the wealth of Shi Chong was many times that of his own.

That brought to a close the farce of a wealth contest and Shi Chong's fabulous wealth became known throughout Luoyang. A minister, Fu Xian, complained to Emperor Wu, criticizing this extravagance and squander and describing it as even more devastating than natural disasters. He expressed a fear for the future if this kind of one-upmanship continued to confer prestige instead of being actively discouraged.

Emperor Wu ignored these complaints. Like Shi Chong and Wang Kai he went on supporting his extravagant lifestyle by redoubling his plunder of the country. This corruption and decadence signalled impending disaster.

20、白痴皇帝

晋武帝和他祖父、伯父、父亲都是善于玩弄权术的人，可是他的儿子——太子司马衷偏偏是一个什么也不懂的低能儿，朝廷里里外外都担心，要是晋武帝一死，让这个低能儿继承了皇位，不知道会闹出什么乱子来。

有些大臣想劝武帝另立太子，但是不敢明说。有一天，在晋武帝举行宴会的时候，大臣卫瓘（音 guàn）假装酒醉，倒在晋武帝的御座面前，用手抚摸着座位，嘴里含糊地说：“这个座位太可惜了！”

晋武帝马上懂得他说的是什么意思，但是假装听不懂，说：“你在胡说些什么，准是喝醉了吧。”接着，吩咐侍从把卫瓘扶起来送走。

打那以后，谁也不敢向晋武帝再提这件事。

晋武帝毕竟也有点犹豫。他想试试他的儿子到底糊涂到什么程度。有一次，他特地送给太子一卷文书，里面提出几件公事，要太子处理。

太子的妻子贾妃，是个机灵的女人，见到这卷文书，连忙把宫里老师请来，替太子代做答案。那个老师很有学问，写出一份卷子，引经据典，答得头头是道。

20. Imbecile of an Emperor

It was well known that the crown prince, Sima Zhong, was not blessed with much in the way of intelligence. There was concern both in and outside the court about what disaster might be in store for the country once Emperor Wu died and was succeeded by the crown prince.

Some ministers wanted to advise the emperor to establish another son as crown prince, but were afraid to come out and say so. One day, at a banquet hosted by the emperor, the minister Wei Guan stumbled and fell in front of the throne in feigned drunkenness. "What a waste of this chair!" He mumbled as he stroked the seat of the throne.

Emperor Wu immediately understood the drift of the complaint but decided to play dumb. "What is this nonsense? You must be drunk." He said, and told his attendants to help Wei Guan up and take him home.

From then on no one dared mention the topic again.

However, Emperor Wu began to have doubts. To test how intelligent the crown prince was, he sent a dossier to the prince and asked him to deal with a few pieces of official business in it.

The wife of the crown prince, the princess consort Jia, was an astute lady. When she saw the dossier, she immediately sent for a court official to help answer all the questions for the prince. The official was an erudite man, and the report he ghostwrote was well-reasoned and contained numerous classical allusions and references.

贾妃看了挺满意，旁边有个略懂文墨的太监却提醒她：“这份卷子好是好，可是皇上明知太子平常不大懂事，现在写出这样一份卷子，反倒叫他怀疑。万一查究起来，就把事情弄糟了。”

贾妃说：“对，亏得你提醒一下，那么还是你来另写一份吧。写得好，将来还怕没你的好处！”

那个太监就另外起草了一份粗浅的答卷，让太子依样画葫芦抄写一遍，送给晋武帝。

晋武帝一看，卷子虽然写得很不高明，但是总算有问必答，可见太子的脑子还是清楚的。俗话说：癞痢头儿子自己的好，能将就也就将就过去了。

公元290年，晋武帝病重。太子司马衷已经三十多岁。按理说，三十多岁的人已经可以处理政事了。但是晋武帝到底不放心，立个遗诏，要皇后的父亲杨骏和他叔父汝南王司马亮一起辅政。晋武帝临死的时候，只有杨骏在身边。杨骏为了想独揽大权，和杨皇后串通起来，另外伪造一道遗诏，指定杨骏单独辅政。

晋武帝一死，太子司马衷即位，这就是晋惠帝。

The princess consort Jia read the report and was quite happy with it. However, a eunuch reminded her. "This is indeed a well-written piece, but the emperor knows perfectly well that the prince has never been a particularly intelligent person. An excellent report like this would only awaken his suspicions, and the whole thing could come back to haunt us if he should order an inquiry."

"You are right. That was a timely reminder. Why don't you redraft it? If your draft does the job, we will not fail to reward you." The princess consort replied.

The eunuch wrote an unpolished, plain report, which was recopied by the prince and passed on to the emperor.

Emperor Wu read the report. Though it was not an exemplary piece of writing, it did provide an answer to every question asked, and thus proved that the crown prince was clear-headed after all.

In 290 AD, Emperor Wu fell critically ill. The crown prince was then in his thirties and should in normal circumstances have been mature enough to take over the reins of state. Yet Emperor Wu was not convinced; he left deathbed instructions for Yang Jun (the Queen's father) and Sima Liang (Prince of Ru'nan and the emperor's uncle) to act as co-regents. At Emperor Wu's death, only Yang Jun was by his bedside. In order to take sole control of imperial power, Yang Jun in collusion with his daughter the queen rewrote the emperor's last edict to designate Yang Jun as sole regent.

Upon his death, Emperor Wu was succeeded by the crown prince Sima Zhong as Emperor Hui.

晋惠帝即位以后，国家政事他一件也管不了，倒是闹出一些笑话来。

有一次，他带了一批太监，在御花园里玩。那是初夏季节，池塘边的草丛间，响起一片蛤蟆的叫声。

晋惠帝呆头呆脑地问身边的太监说：“这些小东西叫，是为官家，还是为私人呢？”

太监面面相觑（音qu），不知该怎样回答，有个比较机灵的太监一本正经地说：“在官地里的为官家，在私地里的为私家。”

惠帝似懂非懂地点点头。

有一年，各地闹饥荒，地方的官员把灾情上报朝廷，说灾区的老百姓饿死的很多。这件事给晋惠帝知道了，就问大臣说：“好端端的人怎么会饿死？”

大臣回奏说：“当地闹灾荒，没粮食吃。”

惠帝忽然灵机一动，说：“为什么不叫他们多吃点肉粥呢？”

西晋出了这样一个白痴皇帝，周围的一群野心家自然就蠢蠢欲动了。

After his accession to the throne, Emperor Hui proved incapable of making any decisions concerning the running of the state and on numerous occasions he made a laughingstock of himself.

One early summer day, as he was amusing himself in the imperial garden with the usual retinue of eunuchs, he heard a chorus of croaking toads.

"Are these little fellows singing for the government or for some private citizens?" The emperor asked the eunuchs.

The eunuchs looked at each other, not knowing how to answer. A eunuch with a quick wit said with a straight face, "They sing for the government if they are located on government land and sing for private citizens if located on private land."

Emperor Hui nodded with an air of uncertain comprehension.

In a year of widespread famine, local officials reported to the central government that many civilians had starved to death. When Emperor Hui was made aware of the situation, he asked his ministers, "How can people starve to death?"

"As a result of natural disasters people in some areas have run out of grain," the ministers replied.

Emperor Hui had a sudden idea. "Why don't they adjust their diet to eat more meat porridge?"

With such a person on the throne, plotters of all stripes began to come out of the woodwork.

21、八王混战

晋武帝认为魏朝的灭亡，是因为没有给皇族子弟权力，使皇室孤立了。所以，他在即位以后，封了二十七个同姓王。每个王国都有自己的军队，王国里的文武官员，都由诸侯王自己选用。他以为这样一来，有许多亲属子弟支持皇室，司马氏的统治就可以稳固了。

晋惠帝即位以后，外戚杨骏取得单独辅政的地位。一些诸侯王当然不甘心，只是一时没有机会动手反对他。

晋惠帝不懂事，但是他的妻子贾后却是一个心狠手辣的人。她不愿让杨骏操纵政权，秘密派人跟汝南王司马亮和楚王司马玮联络，要他们带兵进京，讨伐杨骏。

楚王玮从荆州带兵进了洛阳。贾后有了楚王玮的支持，就宣布杨骏谋反，派兵围了杨骏的家，把杨骏杀了。

杨骏被杀之后，汝南王亮进洛阳辅政。他想独揽大权，可是兵权在楚王玮手里。两个人之间就闹起矛盾来。贾后嫌留

21. War of Eight Princes

Emperor Wu attributed the downfall of the Wei dynasty to the isolation of the royal house resulting from failure to distribute power to its members. After his accession to the throne, he accordingly created 27 princes. Each of these principalities had its own army and its prince had the power to appoint his own civil and military officials. He believed that with so many empowered blood relations supporting the central government, the House of the Simas would be solidly entrenched in power.

After the accession of Emperor Hui, Yang Jun, a relative on his mother's side, became the sole regent. A number of princes naturally begrudged this monopoly of power, but they had no opportunity to act against him.

Emperor Hui had a ruthless, scheming wife in Queen Jia, who had no intention of letting Yang Jun monopolize power. She sent secret emissaries to contact Sima Liang, Prince of Ru'nan, and Sima Wei, Prince of Chu, inviting them to advance on the capital to topple Yang Jun.

Prince Wei of Chu set out from Jingzhou with his troops and entered Luoyang. With the backing of Prince Wei, the queen publicly accused Yang Jun of plotting a rebellion and had him killed after surrounding his residence with troops.

Following Yang Jun's death, Prince Liang of Ru'nan returned to Luoyang as regent. He also wanted to monopolize

看汝南王亮碍事，就假传晋惠帝的密令，派楚王玮把汝南王亮抓起来杀了。

楚王玮本来是贾后的同党，但是贾后怕他连杀两王之后，权力太大。当天晚上，又宣布楚王玮假造皇帝诏书，擅自杀害汝南王，把楚王玮办了死罪。楚王玮知道上了贾后的当，大叫冤枉，已经没有用了。

打那以后，朝廷上没有辅政的大臣，名义上是晋惠帝做皇帝，实际上是贾后专权。

贾后掌权七八年，骄横跋扈，胡作非为，名声坏透了。太子司马遹（音yù），不是贾后生的。贾后怕他长大起来，自己的地位保不住，就千方百计想除掉太子。

有一回，贾后事先叫人起草一封用太子口气写的信，内容是逼晋惠帝退位。贾后把太子请来喝酒，把他灌得烂醉，趁太子昏昏沉沉的时候，骗他把那封信抄了一遍。

第二天，贾后叫晋惠帝召集大臣，把太子写的信给大家传看，宣布太子谋反。大臣们怀疑这封信不是太子写的，贾

power, but the army was still controlled by Prince Wei of Chu. Tensions developed between them. Queen Jia believed that Prince Liang of Ru'nan was a liability, and so she counterfeited a secret order from Emperor Hui, authorizing Prince Wei of Chu to arrest and execute Prince Liang of Ru'nan.

Although Prince Wei was Queen Jia's ally, the queen was worried that after killing two princes in a row he would become too powerful. That same evening, she accused Prince Wei of forging an imperial edict to kill Prince Liang without cause or authorization. This was a capital offense. It dawned on Prince Wei of Chu that he had been duped set up by Queen Jia, and he cried foul, but it was too late.

From then on, there was no regent in the court; though Emperor Hui was the nominal ruler, it was Queen Jia who wielded all the power.

Queen Jia's eight years in power were notorious for her overbearing, arbitrary decisions. She was not the biological mother of the crown prince Yu, and feared losing her power once the crown prince grew stronger, so she worked diligently for his removal.

On one occasion, Queen Jia had a letter written in the name of the crown prince pressuring Emperor Hui to abdicate. She then invited the crown prince for a few drinks and when he became drunk she somehow persuaded him to copy out the letter in his own hand.

The next day, Queen Jia asked Emperor Hui to summon his ministers. She showed them the crown prince's letter and accused him of plotting a rebellion. The ministers expressed doubts that the letter had been written by the prince. When

后要大家核对笔迹。大家一看果然是太子的亲笔，不敢再说。贾后就把太子废了。

朝廷大臣对贾后的凶狠本来十分不满，现在见她废掉太子，背地里十分气愤，议论纷纷。掌握禁军的赵王司马伦觉得这是个好机会，想起兵反对贾后，但他又怕让太子拿了权，也不好对付，就在外面散布空气，说大臣正在秘密打算扶植太子复位。贾后听到这个谣传，真的害怕起来，派人毒死了太子。这样一来，赵王伦抓住了把柄，派禁军校尉、齐王司马冏（音jiǒng）带兵进宫逮捕贾后。

专门玩弄阴谋的贾后，这一下也中了别人的计。她一见齐王冏带兵进宫，大吃一惊，说：“你们想干什么？”

齐王冏说：“奉皇上的诏书，特来逮捕你。”

贾后说：“皇上的诏书都是我发的，哪里还有什么别的诏书！”

贾后大叫大闹，指望惠帝来救她。赵王伦把她抓起来杀了。

赵王伦掌握了政权，野心更大。他当了相国还不满足。过了一年，干脆把晋惠帝软禁起来，自己称起皇帝来。他一即位，就把他的同党，不论文官武将，或是侍从、兵士，都封了大大

Queen Jia asked them to check it closely, they found that it was indeed the prince's handwriting. Queen Jia thus succeeded in deposing the crown prince.

The ministers' resentment of Queen Jia's ruthlessness was now intensified by her role in deposing the crown prince, and they privately voiced angry criticism of her. Sima Lun, the Prince of Zhao, who controlled the imperial guard, sensed a good opportunity to raise arms against Queen Jia. However, he was concerned that an empowered crown prince would be one more obstacle to deal with. He began to spread rumors that the ministers were secretly planning the reinstatement of the crown prince. When the rumors reached Queen Jia's ears, she became apprehensive and had the crown prince poisoned. This gave Prince Lun of Zhao the excuse he needed. He sent the Subcommander of the Imperial Guard, Sima Jiong, to arrest Queen Jia in the imperial palace.

When she saw Sima Jiong entering the palace at the head of his troops, Queen Jia asked with great astonishment, "What do you want?"

"I am here to arrest you on orders of the emperor," Prince Jiong of Qi replied.

"All imperial edicts pass through my hands. I haven't seen any such order," Queen Jia said.

Queen Jia kicked up a fuss in the hope of getting Emperor Hui to rush to her rescue. However, Prince Lun of Zhao had her arrested and executed.

Once he had a taste of power, Prince Lun of Zhao's ambitions grew. He was no longer content to be a mere prime minister. A year later, he placed Emperor Hui under house

小小的官职。那时候，当官的戴的官帽上面都用貂（音diāo）的尾巴做装饰。赵王伦封的官实在太多太滥了，官库里收藏的貂尾不够用，只好找些狗尾巴来凑数。所以，民间就编了歌谣来讽刺他们，叫做“貂不足，狗尾续”。

各地的诸侯王听说赵王伦做了皇帝，谁都想夺这个宝座。这样，在他们之间就展开了一场又一场的厮杀。参加这场混战的是赵王司马伦、齐王司马冏、成都王司马颖、河间王司马颙（音yóng）、长沙王司马乂（音yì）、东海王司马越。加上已经被杀的汝南王亮、楚王玮，一共有八个诸侯王，历史上称为“八王之乱”。

八王之乱前后延续了十六年，到了公元306年，八王中的七个都死了，留下的最后一个东海王越，毒死了晋惠帝，另立了惠帝的弟弟司马炽（音chì），这就是晋怀帝。

arrest and declared himself emperor. He immediately proceeded to confer official titles of varying ranks on his supporters, be they civil or military officials, attendants or soldiers. In that era, the hats worn by officials were ornamented with an ermine's tail. The new officials appointed by Prince Lun of Zhao were so numerous that they soon used up all the ermine tails in the government's storehouse. Many had to content themselves with dog tails on their hats. There was a popular ditty lampooning the phenomenon that went "Dog tails are in when ermine tails run out."

When the other princes heard that Prince Lun of Zhao had declared himself emperor, they all began to vie for the same throne. A period of strife started as Sima Lun (the Prince of Zhao), Sima Jiong (the Prince of Qil), Sima Ying (the Prince of Chengdu), Sima Yong (the Prince of Hejian), Sima Yi (the Prince of Changsha) and Sima Yue (the Prince of Donghai) all jostled for power. If Sima Ling (the Prince of Ru'nan) and Sima Wei (the Prince of Chu), who had been killed, are counted, there were eight princes who were embroiled in this battle for the throne. This period is therefore known as "the War of the Eight Princes" in Chinese history.

The War of Eight Princes went on for sixteen years until 306 AD, when seven of the eight had died, leaving only Prince Yue of Donghai. He killed Emperor Hui of Jin with poison and established Emperor Hui's younger brother Sima Chi as Emperor Huai of the Jin dynasty.

22、匈奴人称汉帝

公元304年，北方的匈奴贵族刘渊反晋独立，自称汉王。

自从西汉末年起，有一部分匈奴人分散居住在北方边远郡县，他们和汉族人相处久了，接受了汉族的文化。匈奴贵族认为上代多次跟汉朝和亲，是汉朝皇室的亲戚，后来就改用汉皇帝的姓——刘。曹操统一北方后，把匈奴三万个部落分为五个部，每个部都设部帅，匈奴贵族刘豹是其中一部的部帅。

刘渊是刘豹的儿子，从小读了许多汉族人的书，力气大，武艺高，能够拉三百斤重的大弓。刘豹死后，刘渊继承他父亲的职位。后来，在西晋的成都王司马颖（八王之一）部下当将军，留在邺城，专管五部匈奴军队。

22. A Xiongnu (Hun) Declares Himself Emperor of Han

In 304 AD, Liu Yuan, a member of the Xiongnu (Hun in Western terminology) aristocracy in the north, stopped paying homage to the Jin dynasty and declared independence, naming himself the King of Han.

Toward the end of the Western Han dynasty, Xiongnu tribes were scattered in remote commanderies and counties in the north. After prolonged contact and interaction with people of Han stock, they had integrated with Han culture. Members of the Xiongnu aristocracy considered themselves related to Han royalty by virtue of the several intermarriages between the Xiongnu and the Han royal families in previous generations. They even changed their name to Liu, the surname of the Han emperors. After unifying the north of China, Cao Cao had grouped the thirty thousand Xiongnu tribes into five leagues, each led by a League Commander. Liu Bao, a Xiongnu aristocrat, was one of the League Commanders.

Liu Yuan, a son of Liu Bao, had read many Han. He had great physical strength and carefully-honed combat skills. It is even said that he could manipulate a 330-pound bow. On Liu Bao's death, Liu Yuan took over his father's position. He later served as a general under Sima Ying, Prince of Chengdu of Western Jin (one of the Eight Princes). He stayed in Yecheng, in charge of the troops of five Xiongnu leagues.

八王混战开始后，匈奴部落里一些贵族们在左国城（今山西离石北）开会商量。有个老年贵族说：“我们匈奴从汉朝开始跟汉人结为兄弟。经过魏、晋两个朝代，匈奴单于后代虽然有封号，却没有自己的尺寸土地，跟一般百姓没有什么两样。现在晋朝发生内乱，自相残杀。这正是我们匈奴人恢复地位的好时机啊！”

大家都觉得他的主意对，叫谁来带头呢？大家一议论，认为刘渊有才能，威望高，推他当单于挺合适。

贵族们派个使者到邺城，把大伙儿的意思告诉刘渊，请他回来。刘渊很高兴，就借口要回匈奴葬自己的父亲，向司马颖请假。司马颖不同意，刘渊只好让使者先回去，并且要五部匈奴集结兵力，向南移动。

后来，晋朝的并州刺史司马腾、将军王浚联络鲜卑贵族

When the War of the Eight Princes started, some Xiongnu noblemen called a meeting in Zuoguo (north of today's Lishi in Shanxi). An elderly Xiongnu nobleman addressed the tribesmen, "The Xiongnu have been like brothers to the Han people since the time of the Han dynasty. Through the Wei and the Jin dynasties the descendants of our Chanyus have been granted titles of nobility by the Chinese emperors, but we do not possess any land that we can call our own. In this regard we are no different from the common people. Now that the Jin dynasty has collapsed into civil war, the Xiongnu have a great opportunity to restore our old glory."

The other noblemen agreed—but who was going to lead them on the path to glory? After some deliberation, they agreed that Liu Yuan possessed the necessary ability and authority.

The noblemen sent an envoy to Yecheng to convey the consensus of the meeting to Liu Yuan and to invite him to return to them. Liu Yuan embraced the proposal and submitted a leave request to Sima Ying, claiming he needed to attend his father's funeral. However, the request was denied and Liu Yuan had no choice but to send the envoy home. In the meantime he instructed the troops of the five Xiongnu leagues in his charge to join forces and move south.

Some time later, Sima Teng (governor of Bingzhou) and General Wang Jun, both officials of the Jin dynasty, aided by the Xianbei minority, launched an attack on Sima Ying, who was defeated and forced to flee to Luoyang. Liu Yuan

攻打司马颖，司马颖失败了，逃往洛阳。刘渊向司马颖要求回去带匈奴兵马来助战，司马颖才让他走了。

公元304年，刘渊回到左国城，大伙儿拥戴他做大单于。他集中了五万人马，亲自率领南下，帮助晋军攻打鲜卑兵。

有人问他，为什么不趁这个机会把晋朝灭掉，反倒去帮助晋军呢？

刘渊说：“要灭掉晋朝，还不是像摧枯拉朽一样容易，但是晋朝的百姓未必会向着我们。我看汉朝立国的年代最长，在百姓中影响大。我们的上代又是汉朝皇室的兄弟。现在汉朝亡了，我们用继承汉朝的名义，也许可以得民心。”

大家听了，觉得是一个好主意。刘渊就宣布自己是汉王。

刘渊称汉王后，很快攻下了上党、太原、河东、平原等几个郡，势力越来越大。一些势力比较小的各族反晋力量也都来归附刘渊。

asked Sima Ying for permission to go back home and return with Xiongnu reinforcements. This time, Sima Ying granted the request.

In 304 AD, Liu Yuan returned to Zuoguo and was unanimously made Chanyu. He put together a force of fifty thousand and personally led it on a southward march, in order to help the Jin troops fend off the Xianbei army.

One of his men asked him why he did not seize the opportunity to overthrow the Jin dynasty instead of helping them.

"To extinguish the Jin would be as easy as snapping dead branches from a tree, but there is no way of telling whether the people of the Jin would support us. In my view, since the Han dynasty enjoyed the longest reign, it continues to exert the strongest grip on the popular imagination. Besides, the Xiongnu of the last generation were brothers to the Han royalty. If we take over the name of the defunct Han dynasty, we may yet win over the people." Liu Yuan replied.

This was found to be a good idea and Liu Yuan subsequently declared himself King of Han.

After proclaiming himself King of Han, Liu Yuan went from strength to strength, quickly capturing the commanderies of Shangdang, Tuiyuan, Hedong and Pingyuan. Some lesser rebel forces of various minorities challenging Jin rule also gave their allegiance to Liu Yuan.

公元308年，刘渊称汉帝。第二年迁都平阳（今山西临汾西南），集中兵力进攻洛阳。洛阳的老百姓虽然恨透腐朽的西晋王朝，但是也不愿受匈奴贵族的统治。所以刘渊两次进攻，都遭到洛阳军民的猛烈抵抗，不得不退兵。

那时候，八王中最后的一个王——东海王司马越还在和一批大臣互相仇杀。晋朝留下的一点点兵力也消耗得差不多了。

后来刘渊死去，他儿子刘聪接替做汉国皇帝，又派大将刘曜、石勒进攻洛阳。洛阳的军民奋勇抵抗，但是毕竟寡不敌众。公元311年，洛阳城终于被攻陷，晋怀帝做了俘虏。

刘聪进洛阳后，杀了大批晋朝的官员和百姓，有一次，刘聪举行宴会，让晋怀帝穿着奴仆穿的青衣给大家斟酒。一些晋朝的遗臣看了，禁不住失声痛哭。刘聪看晋朝遗臣还对怀帝这样有感情，一发狠，就把怀帝杀了。

In 308 AD, Liu Yuan declared himself Emperor of Han. The following year, he moved his capital to Pingyang (southwest of today's Linfen in Shanxi) and concentrated his forces to attack Luoyang. For all their hatred of the corrupt Western Jin dynasty, the people of Luoyang were loath to submit to Xiongnu rule. Twice Liu Yuan attacked and twice he was forced to retreat in the face of resistance from the civilians and the troops defending Luoyang.

During this time, the last of the eight princes still alive, Sima Yue (the Prince of Donghai), was involved in bloody infighting with many court ministers, thus sapping what little fighting strength the Jin still possessed.

When Liu Yuan died, his son Liu Cong succeeded him as Emperor of Han. Liu Cong sent his generals Liu Yao and Shi Le to attack Luoyang once again. Its civilian and military defenders put up a heroic resistance, but were outnumbered by the Xiongnu. In 311 AD, Luoyang fell and Emperor Huai of the Jin dynasty was taken prisoner.

After entering Luoyang, Liu Cong massacred large numbers of Jin officials and civilians. At a banquet hosted by Liu Cong, Emperor Huai was made to wear a servant's blue uniform and pour wine for the guests. Some ex-ministers of the Jin burst out crying at the sight. Maddened by this display of deep affection by the former Jin ministers for their monarch, Liu Cong had Emperor Huai killed.

晋怀帝死后，在长安的晋国官员拥立怀帝的侄儿司马邺继承皇位，这就是晋愍（音mǐn）帝。

公元316年，刘聪攻下长安。晋愍帝也遭到了怀帝同样的命运，在受尽侮辱后被杀。西晋王朝维持了五十二年，终于灭亡。

西晋灭亡之后，北方的各族人民（主要是匈奴、鲜卑、羯、氐、羌五个少数民族）纷纷起义，他们中间的上层分子乘机起兵，像刘渊一样建立政权，前前后后一共出现十六个割据政权，历史上称为“十六国”（旧称五胡十六国，胡是古时候对少数民族的泛称）。

After the death of Emperor Huai of Jin, the Jin officials in Chang'an established his nephew Sima Ye as Emperor Min of the Jin dynasty.

In 316 AD, Liu Cong captured Chang'an. Emperor Min fared no better than his predecessor: he was killed after being put through unspeakable humiliations. That marked the end of the Western Jin dynasty, which had lasted fifty-two years.

After the fall of the Western Jin dynasty, the northern peoples (principally the Xiongnu, the Xianbei, the Jie, the Di and the Qiang minorities) started rebelling. Their leaders took advantage of the chaos to raise arms and, like Liu Yuan, to establish their own regimes. This period saw the emergence of a total of sixteen separate regimes, and is therefore known in Chinese history as the 'Sixteen Kingdoms' period (another term used is the 'Sixteen Kingdoms of the Five Hu', hu being a term used in ancient times to collectively describe the northern nomadic tribes).

23、闻鸡起舞

当匈奴贵族横行北方、西晋王朝面临崩溃的时候，晋朝有一些有志气的将领还坚持在北方战斗。刘琨就是这样的杰出代表。

刘琨年轻的时候，有一个要好的朋友叫祖逖。在西晋初期，他们一起在司州（治所在今洛阳东北）做主簿，晚上，两人睡在一张床上，谈论起国家大事来，常常谈到深更半夜。

一天夜里，他们睡得正香的时候，一阵鸡叫的声音，把祖逖惊醒了。祖逖往窗外一看，天边挂着残月，东方还没有发白。

祖逖不想睡了，他用脚踢踢刘琨。刘琨醒来揉揉眼睛，问是怎么回事。祖逖说：“你听听，这可不是坏声音呀，它在催我们起床了。”

两个人高高兴兴地起来，拿下壁上挂的剑，走出屋子，在熹微的晨光下舞起剑来。

就这样，他们一起天天苦练武艺，研究兵法，终于都成为有名的将军。

23. Sword Practice at the First Crow of the Rooster

Though the rebellions staged by Xiongnu noblemen in the north were threatening the very existence of the Western Jin dynasty, there were still some Jin generals who fought fiercely to uphold the dynasty. Liu Kun was one such general.

In Liu Kun's youth he had a good friend named Zu Ti. When they both served in the regional government of Sizhou (northwest of today's Luoyang) in the early years of the Western Jin, they often engaged in serious discussions about the general state of the country late into the night.

One night, Zu Ti was awoken by the crowing of a rooster. He looked out of the window and found a sliver of moon still hanging over the horizon, the eastern sky still uncoloured by dawn.

Not feeling like going back to sleep Zu Ti awoke Liu Kun. Liu Kun rubbed his eyes and asked what the matter was. "Listen! That was a timely alarm! The rooster just sounded a wakeup call!" Zu Ti replied.

The two got out of bed in high spirits, took down their swords which were hanging on the wall, and headed outside to begin their sword practice.

As a result of this daily practice of martial skills, as well as their diligent study of the arts of war, they eventually became famous generals.

公元308年，晋怀帝任命刘琨做并州刺史。那时候，并州被匈奴兵抢夺杀掠，百姓到处逃亡。刘琨招募了一千多个兵士，冒着千难万险，转战到了并州的晋阳（今山西太原市西南）。

晋阳城里，房屋被焚毁，满地长着荆棘，到处是一片荒凉。偶然见到一些留下来的百姓，已经饿得不像样子了。

刘琨看到这种情况，心里很难过。他命令兵士砍掉荆棘，掩埋尸体，重新把房屋城池都修复起来。他亲自率领兵士守城，防备匈奴兵的袭击。他还采取计策，让匈奴的各部落互相猜疑。后来，有一万多个匈奴人投降了刘琨，连汉主刘渊也害怕了，不敢侵犯。

刘琨把流亡的百姓都召回来耕种荒地。不到一年时间，到处可以听到鸡鸣狗叫的声音，晋阳城渐渐恢复了繁荣的景象。

刘聪攻破洛阳之后，西晋在北方的兵力大多被打散了，只有刘琨还在并州一带坚持战斗。晋愍帝在长安即位后，派人封刘琨为大将军，要他统率并州的军事。

那时候，汉国大将石勒，占据了襄国（在今河北邢台西

In 308 AD, Emperor Huai appointed Liu Kun governor of Bingzhou. At that time, Bingzhou was plagued by the plundering, looting and murderous incursions of Xiongnu warriors, which produced waves of refugees. Liu Kun raised an army of over a thousand men, which he led into combat.

Within the city walls of Jinyang (southwest of today's Taiyuan in Shanxi) they were greeted by a forlorn scene of houses burned to the ground and abandoned ruins everywhere around them. The few residents they occasionally ran into were doubled over with hunger.

Liu Kun was deeply saddened by what he witnessed. He instructed his men to bury the dead and rebuild the houses and city walls and he personally oversaw the construction of city defenses against Xiongnu attacks. As a result of his policy of sowing dissension among the Xiongnu tribes, more than ten thousand Xiongnu soldiers surrendered to Liu Kun. Even Liu Yuan, the self-styled King of Han, was deterred from further incursions into his territory.

Liu Kun encouraged the refugees to return to replant the fallow fields. Within less than a year, the city was once again alive with the sounds of domesticated animals, and soon found its way back to the bustling prosperity of years before.

After Liu Cong breached the defenses of Luoyang, the Western Jin's military efforts in the north largely collapsed. Only Liu Kun kept up the fight in the region of Bingzhou. After his accession in Chang'an, Emperor Min conferred the title of General-in-chief on Liu Kun, who was put in charge of all military matters in Bingzhou.

General Shi Le of the Kingdom of Han, having gained

南），集结了几十万大军，想夺取并州。刘琨南面有刘聪，北面有石勒，前后受敌，处境困难到了极点。可是刘琨没有害怕，没有退缩。他在给晋愍帝的一份奏章里说：“臣跟刘聪、石勒，势不两立。如果不讨平他们，臣决不回朝。”

据说，刘琨在晋阳的时候，有一次，晋阳被匈奴的骑兵层层包围。晋阳城里兵力太少，没有力量打退敌人。大家都感到惊慌，刘琨却仍然泰然自若。到了傍晚，他登上城楼，在月光下放声长啸，声调悲壮。匈奴的骑兵听了，都随着啸声叹息。半夜里，刘琨又叫人用胡笳（一种乐器）吹起匈奴人的曲调，勾起了匈奴骑兵对家乡的怀念，伤感得流下眼泪。天快亮的时候，城头的笳声又响了起来，匈奴兵竟自动跑散了。

后来，刘琨联络鲜卑族首领一起进攻刘聪，没有成功。接着，石勒进攻乐平（今山西昔阳西南），刘琨派兵去救，被石勒预先埋伏好的精兵打得几乎全军覆没。正在这个时候，又传来了长安被刘聪攻陷的消息。到了这步旧地，尽管刘琨怎样顽强，也没法保住并州，只好率领残兵投奔幽州去了。

control of the county of Xiangguo (southwest of today's Xingtai in Hebei), was poised to take Bingzhou with a force of hundreds of thousands of troops. Liu Kun was trapped, with Liu Cong attacking from the south and Shi Le threatening from the north. Undeterred by this dire situation and unyielding in his resistance, he wrote to Emperor Min. "Liu Cong and Shi Le are my sworn enemies. I will only return to the capital after putting down their rebellion."

When Jinyang was surrounded by the huge crowds of Xiongnu cavalraymen, the seriously outnumbered defenders of the city panicked. However, Liu Kun maintained his composure. When night fell, he mounted the watchtower and emitted a loud mournful cry in the moonlight. When the Xiongnu horsemen heard it, they returned the cry. Later that night, Liu Kun had musicians play Xiongnu tunes on Xiongnu reed pipes, which evoked nostalgia among the Xiongnu soldiers and moved them to tears. Shortly before daybreak, when the reed pipes sounded again, the Xiongnu soldiers deserted and dispersed.

Liu Kun's later attack on Liu Cong by allying himself with Xianbei chieftains did not succeed. When Shi Le subsequently attacked Leping (southwest of today's Xiyang in Shanxi), Liu Kun sent his forces to the rescue but nearly lost all of them when they were ambushed by Shi Le's elite troops. In the meantime, news arrived that Chang'an had been taken by Liu Cong. Under the circumstances, no amount of tenacity on Liu Kun's part was enough to enable him to hold on to Bingzhou. He therefore took his remaining troops to seek sanctuary in Youzhou.

24、王马共天下

刘聪攻下长安后，南方还在晋朝官员手里。晋愍帝在被俘前留下诏书，要镇守在建康（原名建业，今江苏南京市）的琅哪（音 láng yá）王司马睿（音 ruì）继承皇位。

司马睿在西晋皇族中，地位和名望并不高。晋怀帝的时候，他被派到江南去镇守。他带去了一批北方的士族官员，其中最有名望的是王导。司马睿对王导言听计从，把他看作知心朋友。

司马睿刚到建康的时候，江南的一些大士族地主嫌他地位低，不怎么看得起他，也不来拜见他。为了这个，司马睿心里不踏实，要王导想个办法。

王导有个堂哥王敦，当时在扬州做刺史，很有点势力。王导把王敦请到建康，两个一商量，想出一个主意来。

这年三月初三，按照当地的风俗是禊（音 xī）节，百姓和官员都要到江边去“求福消灾”。这一天，王导让司马睿坐

24. House of the Simas and the Wangs

After Liu Cong captured Chang'an, the south remained in the control of Jin officials. Before his capture, Emperor Min left instructions for Sima Rui, Prince of Langya, who was defending Jiankang (formerly known as Jianye, and now as Nanjing in Jiangsu), to succeed his throne.

Sima Rui did not enjoy a high status as a member of the royal house of the Western Jin dynasty. During the reign of Emperor Huai, he was dispatched to Jiangnan (the coastal regions south of the Yangtze) on garrison duty. Of the northern mandarins he took with him, the most renowned was Wang Dao. Sima Rui valued Wang Dao's advice and considered him a close friend.

After Sima Rui's arrival in Jiankang, the large landowning families of mandarins in Jiangnan slighted him because of his low status, and did not even deign to pay him a courtesy call. Sima Rui was unsettled by this treatment and asked Wang Dao to come up with a solution.

Wang Dao had a cousin named Wang Dun, who was then governor of Yangzhou and was therefore an influential man. Wang Dao invited Wang Dun to Jiankang and together they came up with an idea.

The third day of the third month of the year was by local tradition the Xi Festival (the bathing to cleanse sin festival).

上华丽的轿子到江边去，前面有仪仗队鸣锣开道，王导、王敦和从北方来的大官、名士，一个个骑着高头大马跟在后面，排成一支十分威武的队伍。

这一天，在建康江边看热闹的人本来很多。大家看到这种从来没见过的大排场，都轰动了。

江南有名的士族地主顾荣等听到这个消息，从门缝里偷偷张望。他们一看王导、王敦这些有声望的人对司马睿这样尊敬，大吃一惊，怕自己怠慢了司马睿，一个接一个地出来排在路旁，拜见司马睿。

这一来，提高了司马睿在江南士族地主中的威望。王导接着就劝司马睿说：“顾荣、贺循是这一带的名士。只要把这两人拉过来，就不怕别人不跟着我们走。”

司马睿派王导上门请顾荣、贺循出来做官，两个人都高兴地来拜见司马睿。司马睿殷勤地接见了他们，封他们做官。

打那以后，江南大族纷纷拥护司马睿，司马睿在建康就站稳了脚跟。

This was a day when civilians and officials would flock to the river to "pray for good fortune and for bad luck to be averted". On this particular day, following Wang Dao's advice, Sima Rui rode in an elegant sedan chair to the bank of the river, preceded by a guard of honor clearing the way by striking gongs, and followed by Wang Dao, Wang Dun and high officials from the north, all riding on large horses. This created a dramatic and imposing sight.

The Xi Festival traditionally attracted large crowds to the riverside to take part in the festivities. This unprecedented display of power created an instant sensation in the city.

When members of the local high society, including Gu Rong, learned of the procession, they all came to see what was happening. They were surprised by the respect that powerful figures such as Wang Dao and Wang Dun showed to Sima Rui. Eager not to be thought of as lacking in respect, they all came out of their residences and lined up on the street to pay homage to Sima Rui.

As a result, Sima Rui's prestige rose among the rich and powerful families of Jiangnan. Wang Dao subsequently offered another piece of advice to Sima Rui. "Gu Rong and He Xun are well known intellectuals in this part of the county. If we have these people on our side, others will follow."

Following Wang Dao's advice, Sima Rui sent him to Gu Rong and He Xun, to offer them high positions in his administration. The two soon came to see Sima Rui, who received them with warm hospitality and appointed them to the promised posts.

Thereafter, all the prominent families in Jiangnan offered

北方发生大乱以后，北方的士族地主纷纷逃到江南来避难。王导又劝说司马睿把他们中间有名望的人都吸收到王府来。司马睿听从王导的意见，前前后后吸收了一百零六个人，在王府里做官。

司马睿听从王导的安排，拉拢了江南的士族，又吸收了北方的人才，巩固了地位，心里十分感激王导。他对王导说：“你真是我的萧何啊！”

公元317年，司马睿在建康即位，重建晋朝。这就是晋元帝。在这以后，晋朝的国都在建康。为了和司马炎建立的晋朝（西晋）相区别，历史上把这个朝代称为东晋。

晋元帝登基的那天，王导和文武官员都进宫来朝见。

晋元帝见到王导，从御座站了起来，把王导拉住，要他一起坐在御座上接受百官朝拜。

这个意外的举动，使王导大为吃惊。因为在封建时代，是绝对不允许有这样的事的。王导忙不迭推辞，他说：“这怎么行。如果太阳跟普通的生物在一起，生物还怎么能得到阳光的照耀呢？”

their allegiance to Sima Rui, who was thus able to establish his authority there.

In the aftermath of the anarchy in the north, a large number of families of mandarins and landowners sought refuge in Jiangnan. Wang Dao once again advised Sima Rui to enlist the best and brightest of them to serve in his administration. Sima Rui took this advice to heart and appointed 106 talented people to various positions.

Thanks to Wang Dao's guidance, Sima Rui was able to further consolidate his position both by winning local support and by using the talents of the northern diaspora in the region. The deeply grateful Sima Rui once said to Wang Dao, "You are indeed my Xiao He!"

In 317 AD, Sima Rui ascended to the throne in Jiankang and thus revived the Jin dynasty, taking the name Emperor Yuan. He also made Jiankang the imperial capital. To distinguish this dynasty from the Western Jin founded by Sima Yan, historians have called it the Eastern Jin dynasty.

On the day of his ascension to the throne, the emperor received Wang Dao and the rest of the court.

When Emperor Yuan saw Wang Dao, he rose from the throne and took hold of him, insisting that he should share the throne with the emperor to receive the homage of the court.

Wang Dao was startled by this unexpected gesture, since the occupation of the throne by anyone other than the emperor was something that had never been heard of. Wang Dao was quick to decline this unusual honor. "I must decline. If a common organism is placed too close to the sun, it will be deprived of the possibility of basking in the sunshine."

王导这一番吹捧，使晋元帝十分高兴。晋元帝也不再勉强。但是他总认为他能够得到这个皇位，全靠王导、王敦兄弟的力量，所以，对他们特别尊重。他封王导担任尚书，掌管朝内的大权；又让王敦总管军事。王家的子弟中，很多人都封了重要官职。

当时，民间流传着一句话，叫做“王与马，共天下”，意思就是王氏同皇族司马氏共同掌握了东晋的大权。

王敦掌握军权，自以为了不起，把晋元帝不放在眼里。晋元帝也看出了王敦的骄横，另外重用了大臣刘隗和刁协，对王氏兄弟渐渐疏远起来。这样，刚刚建立的东晋王朝内部就出现了裂痕。

Emperor Yuan was greatly pleased by Wang Dao's metaphor. He was deeply conscious of the fact that the help of the brothers Wang Dao and Wang Dun had been instrumental in his accession to the throne and therefore held them in great esteem. He made Wang Dao the Imperial Secretary, in charge of overseeing the administration of the court, and he put Wang Dun in charge of the army. Many other members of the Wang family also received important commissions.

A popular saying circulated in that period. "Wang and Ma Rule in the same house," reflecting the fact that power was shared by the Wang family and the royal house of the Simas in the Eastern Jin dynasty.

With control of the army, Wang Dun grew arrogant and conceited and soon began to take the emperor for granted. Wang Dun's arrogance prompted Emperor Yuan to shift important responsibilities to Liu Kui and Diao Xie and to distance himself from the Wang brothers. In this way, the newly founded Eastern Jin dynasty was already riven by internal rifts.

25、石勒读汉书

晋元帝即位的第二年，匈奴族的汉国国主刘聪病死。汉国内部也发生分裂。刘聪的侄儿刘曜接替了国主的地位。他觉得用汉朝的名义并不能欺骗人民，在公元319年，改国号为赵。汉国大将石勒在反晋战争中扩大了兵力，不愿再受刘曜的统治，也自称赵王。

石勒是羯族人，他家世代是羯族部落的小头目。年轻的时候，并州地方闹饥荒，他和部落失散了，曾经给人家做过奴隶、佣人。有一次，石勒被乱兵捉住，关在囚车里。正好他的囚车旁边有一群鹿跑过。乱兵纷纷去追捕鹿群，石勒才趁机会逃走。

石勒受尽苦难，没有出路，就招集一群流亡的农民，组成了一支强悍的队伍。刘渊起兵以后，石勒投降汉国，在刘渊部下当了一员大将。

羯族人的文化比匈奴人要低。石勒从小没有像刘渊那样受过汉族文化教育，不识字。他担任大将以后，渐渐懂得要

25. Shi Le Enjoys Han Books

In the second year of the reign of Emperor Yuan, Liu Cong, the Xiongnu King of Han, died, leaving a kingdom filled with strife. His nephew Liu Yao, who took over as king, believed that taking the name of the old Han dynasty had not been useful, so in 319 AD he changed the name of the dynasty to Zhao. Shi Le, general of the Xiongnu Kingdom of Han, who had expanded his military force in the campaign against the Jin, no longer wanted to play second fiddle to Liu Yao and named himself the King of Zhao as well.

Shi Le had descended from a family of minor chieftains of a Jie tribe. When Bingzhou was ravaged by a famine, the young Shi Le got separated from his tribe and only survived by selling himself into servitude as a slave. He was also once captured by rebels and put in a prisoner transport cart. It was only thanks to the sudden appearance of a herd of deer, drawing the rebel soldiers away on a deer hunt, that Shi Le was able to escape.

After going through a series of trials and tribulations, Shi Le assembled a group of peasant refugees and molded it into a strong fighting force. After Liu Yuan raised a rebellion, Shi Le offered his allegiance to the Kingdom of Han, serving as a general under Liu Yuan.

The members of the Jie minority were, in general, less educated than the Xiongnu. Unlike Liu Yuan, Shi Le had never received a Han education and was therefore illiterate. After

成大事业，光靠武力不行，就依靠一个汉族士人张宾，采取了许多政治措施。他还收留了一批北方汉族中的贫苦的读书人，组织了一个“君子营”。

由于石勒骁勇善战，加上有了张宾一批谋士帮他出谋划策，石勒的势力更加强大了。到了公元328年，终于消灭了刘曜。过了两年，石勒在襄国自称皇帝，国号仍是赵。历史上把刘氏的赵国称为“前赵”，把石勒建立的赵国称为“后赵”。

石勒自己没有文化，但是却十分重视读书人。他做了后赵皇帝后，命令部下，凡捉到读书人，不许杀死，一定要送到襄国来，让他自己处理。

他听从张宾的意见，设立学校，要他部下将领的子弟进学校读书。他还建立了保举和考试的制度。凡是各地保举上来的人经过评定合格，就选用他们做官。

石勒严禁部下提到“胡”字、“羯”字。但是为了安抚汉族士人，有时候也没有执行禁令。

being appointed general, he came to realize that to achieve greater things he needed more than military capabilities. On the advice of a Han intellectual Zhang Bin he implemented numerous political reforms. He also took under his wing a group of impoverished Han scholars and organized them into a "Division of Gentlemen".

The bravery and ability demonstrated by Shi Le in warfare, and the policy guidance provided by advisers such as Zhang Bin, made Shi Le increasingly powerful. By 328 AD, he finally succeeded in toppling Liu Yao and two years later Shi Le proclaimed himself emperor in the county of Xiangguo, retaining the dynasty name of Zhao. Historians call the Zhao of the Liu lineage the "Former Zhao" and Shi Le's Zhao the "Later Zhao."

Although he was illiterate, Shi Le had high regard for scholars and intellectuals. After becoming emperor of the Later Zhao, he gave explicit orders to his troops that they were forbidden to kill any educated people captured by them, who were instead to be transported to Xiangguo for his personal attention.

Following Zhang Bin's advice, he founded a number of schools and put the children of his military officers into these schools to receive an education. He also found talent for public service by instituting a system of recommendations and examinations. Persons recommended by local authorities for public service would be appointed if found qualified after evaluation and appraisal.

Shi Le strictly forbade the mention of the words "Hu" (meaning northern barbarians) and "Jie" (the name of his

有一次，有个汉族官员樊坦被任用做官。樊坦进宫朝见的时候，穿了一身破破烂烂的衣服。石勒吃惊地问他：“你怎么穷到这一步田地？”

樊坦忘记了禁令，回答说：“刚刚碰到一批羯贼，把我的家当都抢走，家里连一件像样的衣服都没有了。”

石勒知道他吃了亏，就安慰他说：“羯贼这样乱抢东西，太不应该！我来替他们赔偿吧！”

樊坦忽然想起了触犯了禁令，吓得浑身发抖，连忙向石勒请罪。

石勒笑着说：“我这个禁令，是对付一般百姓的。你们这些老书生，我不怪你们。”

说着，真的赔给樊坦一些衣服钱财，还赏给他一辆车，一匹马。

石勒挺喜欢读书。他自己不识字，就找一些读书人把书讲给他听，一边听，一边还随时发表自己的见解。

有一次，他让人给他读《汉书》，听到有人劝汉高祖封旧六国贵族的后代的历史。他就说：“唉！刘邦采取这样错误做法，还怎么能够得天下呢？”讲书的人马上给他解释，后来

minority) by his subordinates. However, in the interest of humoring intellectuals of Han stock the prohibition was sometimes waived.

On one occasion, Fan Tan, a newly appointed Han official, arrived at the palace to attend an imperial audience dressed in tattered clothes. "How did you become so impoverished?" Shi Le asked in astonishment.

Fan Tan, momentarily forgetting the prohibitions, replied, "A band of Jie handits just cleaned out my house; that's why I couldn't find any appropriate clothes to wear to the audience."

Shi Le realized that the official had been wronged. "These Jie handits cause a lot of trouble! Allow me to recompense you on their behalf." He said.

Suddenly realizing that he had violated an imperial taboo, Fan Tan began to shake with fright and quickly asked Shi Le for forgiveness.

"My prohibition is intended for ordinary people. I am not going to hold senior scholars to account." Shi Le said with a smile.

As promised, Fan Tan received compensation for his losses and was even given a horse and carriage as a bonus.

Shi Le loved books. He asked others to read and explain the books to him and would give his opinions and comments as the reading went on.

Once, when someone was reading from *the History of Han* and came to the part about Emperor Gaozu being advised to confer titles on the remaining members of the nobility of the former six states, Shi Le commented, "Liu Bang was wrongheaded to do that. How could he expect to control the

由于张良的劝阻，汉高祖并没有这样做。石勒点头说：“这才对啦。”

又有一次，石勒举行宴会招待大臣，宴席上，他问一个大臣，说：“你看我可以比得上古代什么样的帝王？”

大臣吹捧说：“陛下英明神武，比汉高祖还强，别人更比不上。”

石勒笑了笑说：“你说得太过分了。我要是遇到汉高祖，只能做他的臣下，大概跟韩信、彭越差不多。要是我生在汉光武帝那个时候，倒可以和他并驾齐驱，还说不定谁胜谁负呢。”

由于石勒重用人才，在政治上比较开明，后赵初期出现了兴盛的气象。

country with a misguided policy like that?" The reader hastened to explain to him that as a result of Zhang Liang's objection, Emperor Gaozu did not go down that path. At this, Shi Le nodded in approval. "That's more like it!"

On the occasion of a feast organized by Shi Le for his ministers, he asked one of the ministers, "What emperors of antiquity do you think I can be compared to?"

The minister came up with a fawning reply. "His Majesty is superior to Emperor Gaozu in wisdom and might. None of the others could even come close."

"You exaggerate," Shi Le said with a laugh. "If I had been alive in Gaozu's time, the most I would have been qualified for was being one of his ministers, maybe in the league of Han Xin and Peng Yue. However, if I had been born in the time of Emperor Guangwu, then there's no telling which of us would have come out the winner."

As a result of Shi Le's ability to nurture talent as well as his relatively enlightened politics, the Later Zhao witnessed an initial period of prosperity.

26、祖逖中流击楫

自从匈奴人占领中原，北方有许多人避难到南方来。刘琨的好友祖逖也带了几百家乡亲来到淮河流域一带。在逃难的行列中，祖逖主动出来指挥，把自己的车马让给老弱有病的坐，自己的粮食、衣服给大家一起吃用。大家都十分敬重他，推他做首领。

到了泗口（今江苏淮阴市西南），祖逖手下已经有一批壮士，他们都是背井离乡的北方人，希望祖逖带领他们早日恢复中原。

当时，司马睿还没有即皇帝位。祖逖渡江到建康，劝琅琊王司马睿说：“晋朝大乱，主要是由于皇室内部自相残杀，使胡人乘机攻进了中原。现在中原的百姓遭到敌人残酷迫害，

26. Zu Ti Knocks his Oar against the Gunwale in Mid-crossing

After the Xiongnu gained control of the central plains of China, massive waves of refugees began to migrate southward from the north. Liu Kun's close friend Zu Ti also brought hundreds of families from his home town to the Huai river basin. Zu Ti volunteered to direct the entire exodus. He offered his own carriage and horses to the elderly, frail and sick in the group, and shared his food and clothing. Commanding the respect of all, he was made leader by popular demand.

By the time the group reached Sikou (southwest of today's Huaiyin in Jiangsu), Zu Ti had already assembled a large number of warriors, who were all northerners forced to flee their homes and who hoped Zu Ti would lead them in the fight to take back the central plains which would allow them to return to their homeland.

At that time, Sima Rui had not yet ascended to the throne. Zu Ti crossed the river into Jiankang, where he explained his idea to Sima Rui, Prince of Langya. "The anarchy in the Jin dynasty is mainly the result of conflicts between members of the royal house, which gave the Hu barbarians an opening to attack the central plains. The people of the central plains have been brutally oppressed and persecuted by the enemy and so

人人想要起来反抗。只要大王下令出兵，派我们去收复失地，那么北方各地的人民一定会群起响应。”

司马睿并没有恢复中原的打算，但是听祖逖说得有道理，也不好推辞，勉强答应他的请求，派他做豫州（今河南东部和安徽北部）刺史，拨给一千个人吃的粮食和三千匹布，至于人马和武器，叫他自己想办法。

祖逖带着随同他一起来的几百家乡亲，组成一支队伍，横渡长江。船到江心的时候，祖逖拿着船桨，在船舷边拍打（文言是“中流击楫”），向大家发誓说：“我祖逖如果不能扫平占领中原的敌人，决不再过这条大江。”他的激昂的声调和豪壮的气概，使随行的壮士个个感动，人人激奋。

到了淮阴，他们停下来一面制造兵器，一面招兵买马，聚集了两千多人马，就向北进发了。

祖逖的军队一路上得到人民的支持，迅速收复了许多失地。当时，长江以北还有不少豪强地主，趁中原大乱的机会，占据堡坞，互相争夺。祖逖说服他们停止内争，跟随他一起

are eager to fight back. All it takes is an order from you and we will begin wresting back the territory we lost. When that happens, the people in the north will rise up in arms to follow us into combat."

The recovery of the central plains had not been part of Sima Rui's plans, but finding no good excuse to reject Zu Ti's well-argued proposal he gave a grudging consent. He appointed Zu Ti governor of Yuzhou (covering the eastern parts of today's Henan and the northern parts of Anhui) and allotted him enough food for a thousand men as well as three thousand pi of cloth, though he made it clear that he had to raise his own army and find his own weapons.

Zu Ti organized the hundreds of families he had led on the southward exodus into a fighting force and took them across the Yangtze. When the boats reached midstream, Zu Ti made a pledge by hitting the gunwale with an oar. "If I, Zu Ti, cannot wipe out the enemy that seized the central plains from us, I will never cross this river again." His impassioned speech roused the warriors and steeled their will to fight.

In Huaiyin, they paused in their march in order to manufacture weapons and recruit more fighters. By the time they resumed their northward advance their force had expanded to more than two thousand men.

Zu Ti's army received popular support along the way and was able to recover a lot of lost territory. At the time, many powerful local families and landowners had taken advantage of the chaos in the area to engage in turf wars from their private fortresses. Zu Ti was able to persuade many of them to stop their fighting and join his northern expedition.

北伐，对不听号令、依附敌人的，就坚决打击。祖逖的威望就越来越高了。

刘琨在北方听到老朋友祖逖起兵北伐，也很高兴，说：“我夜间枕着兵器睡觉等天亮，就是一心要消灭敌人。现在祖逖跑到我前面去了。”

公元319年，陈留地方的豪强地主陈川投降后赵国主石勒，祖逖决定发兵进攻陈川。石勒派兵五万援救，被祖逖打得大败。接着，后赵的将领桃豹和祖逖的部下韩潜又争夺蓬陂（今河南开封市附近）城。战斗了四十天，相持不下，双方的军粮都发生了困难。

有一天，祖逖用布袋装满了泥土，派一千多名兵士扛着，运到了晋营，装作运粮的样子。最后又派了几个兵士扛着几袋米，运到半路上，故意停下来休息。

桃豹在赵营内看到晋兵运来那么多的米，自然眼红，就趁晋兵休息的时候，派了大批兵士来抢。晋兵丢下米袋就逃。赵营里早已断了粮，抢到了一点米，只能够勉强维持几天，但是大家看到晋营里军粮那么充足，军心就动摇起来了。桃豹赶快派人向石勒求救。

Insubordination was severely punished, and Zu Ti's authority continued to grow.

Liu Kun, who had remained in the north, was delighted that his friend Zu Ti had launched a northern expedition. "Every night I sleep with my head resting on my sword because I'm committed to defeating the enemy. Now, Zu Ti has acted ahead of me." He said.

In 319 AD, following the submission of Chen Chuan (a powerful landowner in Chenliu) to Shi Le (King of the Later Zhao), Zu Ti decided to attack Chen Chuan. The fifty thousand troops sent by Shi Le to reinforce Chen Chuan were swiftly routed by Zu Ti. Subsequently Tao Bao (general of the Later Zhao) and Han Qian (one of Zu Ti's men) fought for control of the city of Pengpi (near today's Kaifeng in Henan). Both sides began to see their rations running out as the battle raged for over forty days without an apparent winner.

One day, Zu Ti sent a thousand soldiers carrying bags filled with earth to the Jin camp, in order to give the impression that their camp still had plenty of rations. He then sent out a number of soldiers carrying bags of rice, instructing them to pause for a rest en route to their destination.

When Tao Bao saw the Jin soldiers carrying rice, he sent a large number of troops to grab the rice from the Jin soldiers taking a rest. The Zhao camp had long run out of food and the rice seized from the Jin soldiers lasted only a few days with the strictest rationing. The impression created of plentiful supplies of food in the Jin camp started to affect the morale of the Zhao troops, and Tao Bao urgently appealed to Shi Le for help.

过了几天，石勒派了一千头驴子装运了粮食接济桃豹。祖逖早就探得情报，在路上设下伏兵，把后赵的粮食全部截夺下来。这样一来，桃豹再也支持不住，连夜放弃阵地逃跑了。

祖逖领导晋兵艰苦奋斗，收复了黄河以南的全部领土，后赵的兵士陆续向祖逖投降的也很多。晋元帝即位后，因为祖逖功劳大，封他为镇西将军。

祖逖在战斗的艰苦环境中，和将士们同甘共苦，自己的生活很节约，把省下的钱尽量帮助下。他还奖励耕作，招纳新归附的人。即使是跟自己关系疏远和地位低下的人，他也同样热情地对待。当地的百姓都很拥护他。

有一次，祖逖举行宴会招待当地父老。人们高兴得又是唱歌，又是跳舞。有些老人说，“我们都老了，今天能够在活着的日子里看到亲人，死了也可以闭上眼睛了。”

祖逖一面操练士兵，一面扩大兵马，预备继续北伐，收复黄河以北的国土。哪儿想到昏庸的晋元帝对祖逖竟放心不过，怕祖逖势力太大了不好控制，派了一个戴渊来当征西将

A few days later, Shi Le sent a thousand donkeys carrying food for Tao Bao's troops. Having found out about the shipment ahead of time, Zu Ti's forces ambushed the convoy and intercepted all the food. As a result, Zhao Bao was unable to hold out any longer and abandoned his position that very night.

Under Zu Ti's leadership, the Jin forces were able to regain all the lands south of the Yellow River and large numbers of Later Zhao troops surrendered to them. Emperor Yuan named Zu Ti "Zhen Xi General" for his outstanding achievements.

Despite the harsh wartime conditions, Zu Ti lived a frugal life, using his savings to help out his men. He offered incentives to promote crop cultivation and was not averse to offering positions to people who had recently transferred allegiance to him. Even people outside his circle of friends and acquaintances, as well as people of low standing, were received with warm hospitality by him, which earned him a large amount of popular support.

At a feast organized by Zu Ti for the elderly, the partygoers sang and danced with great joy. "Though we are all getting on in years, we can go with peace now that we have been able to see our loved ones again." Many old people were heard to say.

Zu Ti kept training his soldiers and expanded recruitment of new blood in preparation for the next stage of the northern expedition, which was aimed at regaining lands north of the Yellow River. Emperor Yuan, however, was becoming paranoid about Zu Ti's loyalty, and feared that an overpowerful Zu Ti would be hard to rein in. He therefore appointed Dai Yuan as "Zheng Xi General" (zheng xi literally means conquest of the

军，统管北方六州的军事，叫祖逖归他指挥。祖逖辛辛苦苦收复失地，反而受到朝廷的牵制，心里很不舒坦。

不久，祖逖听说他的好友刘琨在幽州被王敦派人害死，又听说晋元帝跟王敦正在明争暗斗，心里又是忧虑，又是气愤，终于得病死了。豫州的男女老少听到祖逖去世的消息，像死了自己的亲人一样伤心。

祖逖虽然没有完成恢复中原的事业，但他那中流击楫的英雄气概，一直被后代的人所传诵。

west) overseeing the military affairs of the six regions in the north, meaning that Zu Ti was under his command. Zu Ti was naturally unhappy about this attempt by the central government to clip his wings after he had fought so hard to reclaim so much territory for it.

Soon after this, Zu Ti learned that his friend Liu Kun had been killed in Youzhou by one of Wang Dun's henchmen. As a result of excessive worry and anger he fell ill and died. His death was greatly mourned.

Although Zu Ti did not get to fully accomplish his vision of recovering the central plains of China, his heroic pledge made with an oar knocking against the gunwale in mid-crossing has become a popular legend that has echoed down the ages.

27、王羲之写《兰亭集序》

在“王马共天下”的东晋时期，王氏是高级的士族。王导、王敦家族的子弟，都当上了大小的官员，他们大多数是庸庸碌碌的官僚，但在他们当中，也出了一个我国历史上有名的书法家。他就是王羲之（羲音xī）。

王羲之从小喜爱写字，据说他平时走路的时候，也随时用手指比划着练字，日子一久，连衣服都划破了。经过勤学苦练，王羲之的书法就达到很高的水平。

因为他出身士族，加上他的才华出众，朝廷中的公卿大臣都推荐他做官。他做过刺史，也当过右军将军（人们也称他王右军）。后来又在会稽郡做官。他不受住在繁华的京城，见到会稽的风景秀丽，非常喜爱，一有空，就和他的朋友们一

27. Wang Xizhi Writes his Famous "Preface to the Poems Composed at the Orchid Pavilion"

In the Eastern Jin dynasty, the prominent Wang clan, having provided generations of high ranking mandarins, exercised a powerful influence in court politics. The descendants of Wang Dao and Wang Dun held public office at varying ranks, though most of them remained mediocre bureaucrats. One, however, stood out from the rest. He was Wang Xizhi, one of China's best known calligraphers.

Wang Xizhi enjoyed writing since he was a child. It is said that even while walking he would practice writing on his clothes with his finger, so much so that they became threadbare in some spots. With hard work and assiduous study, Wang Xizhi soon became a highly accomplished calligrapher.

In the fact that he came from a prominent family of mandarins and possessed an unusual talent earned him recommendations for public office from ministers and high officials in the imperial court. He became a regional governor and the Right Leader of Court Gentlemen (hence the nickname Wang the Right Leader), and he later served in the

起游览山水。有一次，王羲之和他的朋友在会稽郡山阴的兰亭举行宴会。大家一面喝酒，一面写诗。最后由王羲之当场挥笔，写了一篇文章纪念这次宴会，这就是有名的《兰亭集序》。那幅由王羲之亲笔书写的《兰亭集序》，历来被誉为“天下第一行书”，可惜它的真迹已经失传，只留下一些古人的临摹本。

王羲之的书法越来越有名，当时的人都把他写的字当宝贝看待。据说有一次，他到他门生家里去，门生很热情地接待他。他坐在一个新的几案旁，看到几案的面又光滑又干净，引起了写字的兴趣，叫门生拿笔墨来。那个门生高兴得不得了，马上把笔墨拿来给王羲之。王羲之在几案上写了几行字，留作纪念，就回去了。

过了几天，那个门生有事出门去了。他的父亲进书房收拾，一看新几案给墨迹弄脏了，就用刀把字刮掉。等门生回来，几案上的字迹已经不见了。门生为这件事懊恼了好几天。

又有一次，王羲之到一个村子去。有个老婆婆拎了一篮

commandery government of Guiji. In fact, he preferred the quiet beauty of Guiji to the bustling and opulent imperial capital. In Guiji, whenever he could spare some time he would often travel to various scenic spots with his friends. On one such occasion, Wang Xizhi and friends had a feast at the Orchid Pavilion in Shanyin, where they composed poetry over wine. The feast culminated with Wang Xizhi wielding his brush to compose an essay in memory of the occasion. This is the famous "Preface to the Poems Composed at the Orchid Pavilion." The original, written in Wang Xizhi's hand, has been called the "Finest Piece of Calligraphy in Running Script." Unfortunately it has been lost, and only later imitations have survived.

As Wang Xizhi's fame as a calligrapher grew, his works became avidly sought after by his contemporaries. Legend has it that Wang Xizhi once visited a student's home, and spotted a brand new table with a smooth and clean surface. This put him in a mood for some brushwork, and so he asked his student for a brush and some ink. The student was overjoyed and immediately brought him his tools. After writing a few lines on the table surface as souvenir, Wang Xizhi left.

A few days later, the student had to leave his home to attend to some business. When his father entered the study to tidy it up, he noticed that the new table was covered in ink, so he scraped off the stain with a knife. When the student returned to find the calligraphy gone from the table surface, he became beside himself with anger.

Another story relates what happened when Wang Xizhi met an old woman at a country fair. She was hawking

子六角形的竹扇在集上叫卖。那种竹扇很简陋，没有什么装饰，引不起过路人的兴趣，看样子卖不出去了。老婆婆十分着急。

王羲之看到这情形，很同情那老婆婆，就上前跟她说：“你这竹扇上没画没字，当然卖不出去，我给你题上字，怎么样？”

老婆婆不认识王羲之，见他这样热心，也就把竹扇交给他写了。

王羲之提起笔来，在每把扇面上龙飞凤舞地写了五个字，就还给老婆婆。老婆婆不识字，觉得他写得很潦草，很不高兴。

王羲之安慰她说：“别急。你只告诉买扇的人，说上面是王右军写的字。”

王羲之一离开，老婆婆就照他的话做了。集上的人一看真是王右军的书法，都抢着买。一篮竹扇马上就卖完了。

王羲之有一个特殊的癖好，不管哪里有好鹅，他都有兴趣去看，或者把它买回来玩赏。

山阴（今浙江绍兴）地方有一个道士，他想要王羲之给他写一卷《道德经》，可是他知道王羲之是不肯轻易替人抄写经书的。后来，他打听到王羲之喜欢白鹅，就特地养了一批品种好的鹅。

hexagonally shaped bamboo fans which she carried in a basket. The fans had a simple, crude design, obviously quite unappealing to the passers-by, and the woman had a sinking sense of not being able to sell any fans that day.

Wang Xizhi was sympathetic. "The fans are not selling because they are not adorned by a painting or calligraphy. Do you mind if I write something on them?"

The old woman did not know Wang Xizhi, but she gave the bamboo fans to him anyway because of his friendly offer of help.

Wang Xizhi wrote five characters on each fan in his "dragons-flying-and-phenixes-dancing" flowing style before returning them to the old, illiterate woman, who was quite put off by the apparently careless scribblings.

Wang Xizhi sensed her disappointment. "Don't worry! Just tell the prospective buyers that this is the work of Wang the Right Leader."

After Wang Xizhi left, the old woman did as instructed. Her new customers, recognizing the handwriting of Wang the Right Leader, snapped up the fans in no time.

Wang Xizhi had a particular interest in geese. Whenever he heard of a fine specimen of a goose he would go and inspect it, with a view to buying it in order to take it back home.

A Taoist priest in Shanyin (today's Shaoxing in Zhejiang) had always entertained the idea of asking Wang Xizhi to copy a chapter of the Tao Te Ching (The Book of the Way and its Virtue, attributed to Laozi) in his exquisite handwriting. However, he knew that Wang Xizhi rarely agreed to such requests. So, having found out about Wang Xizhi's predilection for geese, the priest bred a batch of fine pedigreed white geese.

王羲之听说道士家有好鹅，真的跑去看了。当他走近那道士屋旁，正见到河里有一群鹅在水面上悠闲地浮游着，一身雪白的羽毛，映衬着高高的红顶，实在逗人喜爱。

王羲之在河边看着看着，简直舍不得离开，就派人去找道士，要求把这群鹅卖给他。

那道士笑着说：“既然王公这样喜爱，就用不到破费，我把这群鹅全部送您好了。不过我有一个要求，就是请您替我写一卷经。”

王羲之毫不犹豫地给道士抄写了一卷经，那群鹅就被王羲之带回去了。

When Wang Xizhi learned of the fine geese kept by the Taoist priest, he visited him to take a look. As he approached the Taoist's dwelling, he was greeted by the captivating sight of a gaggle of geese swimming in the river, their glowing plumage snow white and their bright red crowns held high in the air.

Wang Xizhi paused, transfixed, on the river bank, loath to take his eyes from the beautiful creatures. He sent someone to ask the priest if he would sell the geese to him.

"Since Mr. Wang likes them so much, I will give the entire batch of geese to him free of charge. But I have a little request: I'd like to ask him to copy a chapter of the Daode Jing for me." The Taoist priest said with a smile.

Without hesitation, Wang Xizhi granted him his wish and then took the geese home with him.

28、桓温北伐

后赵国主石虎（石勒的儿子）死了以后，内部发生大乱，后赵大将冉闵称帝，建立了魏国，历史上称为冉魏；鲜卑族贵族慕容皝（音huàng）建立的前燕又灭了冉魏。公元352年，氏族贵族苻健也乘机占领了关中，建立了前秦。

后赵灭亡的时候，东晋的将军桓温向晋穆帝（东晋的第五个皇帝）上书，要求带兵北伐。桓温是个很有军事才能的人，他在当荆州刺史的时候，曾给东晋王朝立过大功。

但是东晋王朝内部矛盾很大。晋穆帝表面上提升了桓温的职位，实际上又猜忌他。桓温要求北伐，晋穆帝没有同意，却另派了一个殷浩带兵北伐。

殷浩是个只有虚名、没有军事才能的文人。他出兵到洛

28. Huan Wen on a Northern Expedition

The death of Shi Hu, king of the Later Zhao and son of Shi Le, was followed by a period of enormous internal upheaval, with a general of the Later Zhao, Ran Min, claiming the throne and founding the kingdom of Wei (historically known as the Wei of Ran). This in turn was conquered by the kingdom of the Former Yan, founded by Murong Huang of the Xianbei nobility. In 352 AD Fu Jian, of the Di nobility, also took advantage of the anarchy to gain control of Guanzhong and establish the Former Qin.

When the kingdom of the Later Zhao fell, Huan Wen (a general of the Eastern Jin) presented a petition to Emperor Mu (the fifth monarch of the Jin dynasty), asking for permission to lead a force on a northern expedition. Huan Wen was known for his military talent and ability; during his governorship of Jingzhou he had rendered great service to the Jin through his military achievements.

However, the Eastern Jin was racked by internal conflicts. Although Emperor Mu had promoted Huan Wen, he harbored suspicions about the general. Therefore, Emperor Mu did not grant Huan Wen permission to lead an expeditionary force to the north; instead he gave the mission to Yin Hao.

Yin Hao was a civilian who, despite his military title, had no real military ability. In a crushing defeat by the Qiang

阳，被羌族人打得大败，死伤了一万多人马，连粮草武器也丢光了。

桓温又上了道奏章，要求朝廷把殷浩撤职办罪。晋穆帝没办法，只好把殷浩撤了职，同意桓温带兵北伐。

公元354年，桓温统率晋军四万，从江陵出发，分兵三路，进攻长安。前秦国主苻健派兵五万在峽关抵抗，被晋军打得落花流水。苻健只好带了六千名老弱残兵，逃回长安，挖了深沟坚守。

桓温胜利进军，到了灞上。长安附近的郡县官员纷纷向晋军投降。桓温发出告示，要百姓安居乐业。百姓欢天喜地，都牵了牛，备了酒，到军营慰劳。

自从西晋灭亡以后，北方百姓受尽混战的痛苦。他们看到桓温的晋军，都高兴地流着眼泪说：“想不到今天还能够重新见到晋军。”

桓温驻兵灞上，想等关中麦子熟了的时候，派兵士抢收

minority at Luoyang, his forces suffered over ten thousand casualties and forfeited all their food supplies and weapons.

In the wake of this debacle, Huan Wen presented another petition to the emperor, this time asking that Yin Hao be stripped of his position and charged with dereliction of duty. Emperor Mu had no choice but to agree; he sacked Yin Hao and authorized Huan Wen to lead the expedition to the north.

In 354 AD, the forty-thousand strong Jin force led by Huan Wen set out from Jiangling on a three-pronged attack against Chang'an. The fifty thousand troops sent by the king of the Former Qin, Fu Jian, to encounter the expeditionary force at Yao Pass were soon scattered by the Jin army. Fu Jian was forced to flee back with his six thousand old, weak and wounded soldiers to Chang'an, where he had deep trenches dug in preparation for a long siege.

When Huan Wen's victorious force reached Bashang, many officials of the commanderies and counties around Chang'an instantly surrendered. Huan Wen put out public announcements that urged the populace to continue to go about their normal business. The inhabitants were delighted by this policy and came of their own accord with gifts of cattle and wine to the troops.

Since the fall of the Western Jin, the people of the north had suffered enormously in the Interdynastic wars. "We never expected to see Jin troops again in our lifetime." They said to the Jin troops of Huan Wen:

Huan Wen camped in Bashang, in the expectation of replenishing his troops' food supply with the local wheat crop when it became ready for harvesting. However, Fu Jian

麦子，补充军粮。可苻健也厉害，他料到桓温的打算，就把没有成熟的麦子全部割光，叫桓温收不到一粒麦子。

桓温的军粮断了，呆不下去，只好退兵回来。但是这次北伐毕竟打了一个大胜仗，晋穆帝把他提升为征讨大都督。

以后，桓温又进行了两次北伐。最后一次，进攻前燕，一直打到枋头（今河南浚县西南），后来，因为被前燕切断粮道，遭到失败。

桓温长期掌握东晋的军事大权，野心越来越大。有一次，他自言自语地说：“男子汉如果不能流芳百世，也应当遗臭万年。”

有个心腹官员知道他的野心，向他献计，说要提高自己的威信，就先得学西汉霍光的办法，把现在的皇帝废了，自己另立一个皇帝。

那时候，晋穆帝已经死去。在位的皇帝是晋废帝司马奕（音 yì）。桓温带兵到建康，把司马奕废了，另立一个司马昱（音 yù）当皇帝，这就是晋简文帝。桓温当了宰相，带兵驻在姑孰（今安徽当涂）。

过了两年，晋简文帝病重，留下遗诏由太子司马曜继承

quickly caught on to Huan Wen's intentions and had the wheat crop harvested before it was ripe to deprive Huan Wen of the bounty.

With his hope of locally restocking his food supply dashed, Huan Wen was no longer able to maintain his troops there and had to pull them back. Despite this setback, the major battle won by him in the expedition prompted Emperor Mu to promote him to Commander-in-chief of the Punitive Expedition.

Huan Wen led two more northern expeditions. The last of these, targeted at the Former Yan, reached as far as Fangtou (southwest of today's Xun County in Henan), but eventually failed because the troops' supply route was cut off by the Former Yan.

Huan Wen's ambitions grew in proportion to the length of time he exercised sole control over the army. He was once overheard to mutter to himself, "If a man could not leave a lasting legacy of virtue and honor, it would be nice if his name could at least live forever in infamy."

A trusted supporter who was well aware of his ambitions suggested to him that in order to bolster his authority he should follow the example of Huo Guang in the time of the Western Han, and replace the incumbent emperor with one of his own choosing.

By that time, Emperor Mu had died and been succeeded by Sima Yi. Huan Wen marched his troops to Jilankang, where he deposed Sima Yi and established Sima Yu as Emperor Jianwen. Huan Wen became Counselor-in-chief and was stationed with his troops in Gushu (today's Dangtu in Anhui).

Two years later, the seriously ill Emperor Jianwen

皇位。这就是晋孝武帝。桓温本来以为简文帝会把皇位让给他。听到这个消息十分失望，就带兵进了建康。

桓温到达建康那天，随身带的将士，都是全副盔甲，手里拿着明晃晃的武器。朝廷官员到路边去迎接时，看到这个情景，吓得变了脸色。

桓温请两个最有名望的士族大臣王坦之、谢安到他官邸去会见。王、谢两人早已听说桓温事前在客厅的背后埋伏一批武士，想杀掉他们。所以，王坦之到了相府，浑身出冷汗，连衣服都湿透了。

谢安却十分镇静。进了厅堂坐定之后，他对桓温说：“我听说自古以来，讲道义的大将，总是把兵马放在边境去防备外兵入侵。桓公为什么却把兵士藏在壁后呢？”

桓温听了，也有点不好意思，说：“我也是不能不防备点儿。”说着，就命令左右把后面埋伏好的兵撤去。

桓温看到建康的士族中反对他的势力还不小，不敢轻易动手。不久，就病死了。

桓温死后，谢安担任了宰相，桓温的弟弟桓冲担任荆州刺史，两人同心协力辅佐晋孝武帝，东晋王朝出现了团结的气氛。

designated Sima Yao as his successor in last will. Sima Yao duly became Emperor Xiaowu. Huan Wen, who had expected Emperor Jianwen to leave the throne to him, was bitterly disappointed by this turn of events and once again marched his troops into Jiankang.

The court officials who turned out to greet Huan Wen turned pale with fright at the ominous sight of his troops, who were dressed in full battle gear and armed to the teeth.

Huan Wen invited two of the most prominent mandarins, Wang Tanzhi and Xie An, for a meeting at his official residence. They had been tipped off that Huan Wen planned to kill them by placing soldiers in ambush outside the meeting room, and Wang Tanzhi consequently arrived with his clothes soaked with sweat.

Xie An, on the other hand, retained his composure. "I understand that just-minded generals since antiquity have always deployed their troops on the frontiers to defend the country from foreign aggression. Therefore, I wonder why Lord Huan has hidden his troops behind these walls?" He said to Huan Wen.

Huan Wen was a little embarrassed by this remark. "I just wanted to take some extra precaution." He said, and swiftly ordered the ambushers to withdraw.

Sensing strong opposition to him among the prominent mandarin families in Jiankang, Huan Wen bided his time—however, he soon died of illness.

Upon Huan Wen's death, Xie An became Counselor-in-chief and Huan Wen's brother Huan Chong became governor of Jingzhou. The two worked closely together to support Emperor Xiaowu. In this way, a new-found unity began to take hold in the Eastern Jin.

29、王猛扞虱谈天下

桓温第一次北伐驻军灊上的时候，有一天，一个穿着一身破旧短衣的读书人到军营前求见桓温。桓温正想招揽人才，听说来了个读书人，很高兴地接见了。

这个读书人名叫王猛，从小家里很贫困，靠卖谷算过活。但是他挺喜欢读书，学问渊博。当时关中士族嫌他出身低微，瞧不起他，他毫不在乎。有人曾经请他在前秦的官府里做小官吏，他也不愿去。后来索性在华阴山隐居了下来。这次听到桓温打进关中，特地到灊上求见桓温。

桓温想试试王猛的学识才能，请王猛谈谈当今天下形势。

王猛把南北双方的政治军事形势分析得一清二楚，见解十分精辟，桓温听了不禁暗暗佩服。

王猛一面谈，一面把手伸进衣襟里摸虱子（文言是“扞

29. Wang Meng Discusses National Politics While Picking Lice

When Huan Wen billeted his troops in Bashang during his first northern expedition, a scholarly man dressed in a ragged short tunic came to the camp one day and asked to see him. Huan Wen, who had recently been on the lookout for new talent, greeted the scholar with open arms.

The scholar, whose name was Wang Meng, had grown up in an impoverished family that eked out a living selling bamboo dustpans. Nonetheless, he was an avid reader and possessed a keen intellect. The families of mandarins in Guanzhong snubbed him because of his humble origins, but that did not bother him in the least. He declined offers of low-ranking positions in the government of the Former Qin and eventually chose to live a recluse's life on Mount Huayin. News of Huan Wen's advance into Guanzhong brought him to Bashang to request a meeting.

To test Wang Meng's knowledge and abilities, Huan Wen asked him to comment on the situation in the country.

Wang Meng gave a clear analysis of the political and military situation in both the south and the north, and Huan Wen marveled at his insights.

As he held forth on national politics, Wang Meng

虱”，拼音mén)。桓温左右的兵士们见了，差一点笑出来。但是王猛却旁若无人，照样跟桓温谈得起劲。

桓温问他说：“这次我带了大军，奉皇上的命令远征关中，为百姓除害。但是为什么我来到这里，地方上的豪杰都不来找我呢？”

王猛淡淡一笑说：“您不怕千里跋涉，深入敌人腹地。但是长安近在眼前，您却不渡过灞水。大家不知道您心里怎么打算，所以不愿来见您啊。”

王猛这一番话正说中了桓温的心事。原来桓温北伐，主要是想在东晋朝廷树立他的威信，制服他在政治上的对手。他驻军灞上，不急于攻下长安，正是想保存他的实力。

桓温无话可答。但是他看出王猛是一个难得的人才，从关中退兵的时候，他再三邀请王猛一起南下，还封他一个比较高的官职。王猛知道东晋王朝的内部矛盾很大，拒绝了桓温的邀请，仍旧回到他的华阴山去了。

后来，前秦的皇帝苻健死了，他的儿子苻生是一个十分残暴的人，很快就被他的堂兄弟苻坚推翻。

frequently reached inside his tunic to pick lice. The soldiers at Huan Wen's side nearly burst out laughing at the sight, but Wang Meng kept up his lively discussion with Huan Wen, oblivious of the spectacle he was making of himself.

"I've led a massive expeditionary force to Guanzhong on the emperor's orders to help the people there. Therefore, I am baffled by the fact that the local elite have not deigned to pay me a visit." Huan Wen said.

"You've come all this way, deep into enemy territory, but have stopped short of crossing the Ba River into Chang'an, which is clearly within reach. People are unsure what you have in mind—that's why they have not yet come to call on you." Wang Meng replied.

Wang Meng's assessment was correct, since the hidden agenda behind Huan Wen's northern expedition was to cement his authority in the court of the Eastern Jin and to subdue his political rivals. The act of stationing his troops in Bashang and taking his time in capturing Chang'an was designed to preserve his strength.

Huan Wen fell silent in recognition of Wang Meng's unusual talent. When he withdrew his force from Guanzhong, he invited Wang Meng to accompany him to the south, even promising him high office. Wang Meng, however, was well aware of the deep rifts inside the Eastern Jin dynasty and declined the offers, and returned instead to his hermitage in Mount Huayin.

Fu Jian, the emperor of the Former Qin, was succeeded upon his death by his son Fu Sheng, a cruel man, who was soon overthrown by his cousin Fu Jian.

苻坚是前秦王朝中一个有作为的皇帝。他在即位以前，就想找一个得力的助手，有人向他推荐王猛。

苻坚派人把王猛请了来，两个人一见如故，谈起历史上兴亡大事，见解完全吻合。苻坚高兴得了不得，认为真像刘备找到诸葛亮一样。

苻坚即位后，自称大秦天王。王猛成为他最亲信的大臣，一年里被提升五次，权力大得没人能跟他比。

那时候，王猛才三十六岁，年纪轻轻，又是汉族人。前秦的氏族老臣见到苻坚这样信任王猛，哪会心服。有个氏族大臣樊世，是跟着苻健一起打下关中的。有一次见到王猛，很生气地骂他：“我们耕种好土地，你倒来吃白饭。”

王猛也顶了他一句说：“你们不但要耕种，还要给我做饭呢！”

樊世更冒火了，说：“我不把你的头割下来挂在长安城头上，我也不想活了。”

隔了几天，樊世和王猛在苻坚面前又争论起来，樊世当着苻坚的面，要想打王猛。苻坚觉得樊世闹得不像话，把他办了死罪。从此以后，氏族官员再不敢在苻坚面前说王猛的坏话了。

王猛受苻坚的信任，帮助苻坚镇压豪强，整顿朝政。王

Fu Jian took his new position extremely seriously. He looked for a capable aide and Wang Meng was recommended to him.

Wang Meng was invited for a meeting with Fu Jian, and the two hit it off immediately. Their views on the rise and decline of past dynasties turned out to be identical. Fu Jian was elated, comparing the experience to Liu Bei's good fortune in finding Zhuge Liang to advise him.

Following Fu Jian's accession as the self-styled Son of Heaven of the Great Qin, Wang Meng became his most trusted minister, and was promoted five times in a year until he occupied a position of unrivaled power.

Members of the old guard of the Di ethnicity in the Former Qin were naturally resentful of Fu Jian's trust in Wang Meng, since Wang Meng was then only 36 years old, and of Han stock to boot. On one occasion Fan Shi, a minister of the Di minority who had fought shoulder to shoulder with Fu Jian in the conquest of Guanzhong, angrily denounced Wang Meng to his face, "We tilled the soil and planted the crops so that you can have free lunches!"

"In the future, you will not only plant crops but also cook my meals!" Wang Meng retorted.

Incandescent with anger, Fan Shi said, "I will not rest until I have cut off your head and hung it on the gate of Chang'an."

A few days later, Fan Shi and Wang Meng had another argument, this time in front of Fu Jian, where Fan Shi tried to attack Wang Meng. Fu Jian found this behavior unacceptable, and had Fan Shi executed. After that, Wang Meng was rarely criticized by officials of Di ethnicity, at least in front of Fu Jian.

With the help of his trusted adviser Wang Meng, Fu Jian

猛兼任京兆尹的时候，太后的弟弟、光禄大夫强德酗酒闹事，强抢人家财物和妇女。王猛一到任，就逮捕了强德，一面派人报告苻坚。等到苻坚派人来宣布赦免强德，王猛早已把强德处决了。以后几十天里，长安的权门豪强，皇亲国戚，被处死、判刑、免官的二十多人。朝廷官员大为震惊，坏人也不敢胡作非为了。苻坚赞叹说：“我现在才懂得国家应该有法制呢。”

过了十几年，前秦在苻坚和王猛的治理下，国力越来越强大，先后灭掉了前燕、代国和前凉三个小国，统一了黄河流域地区。

公元375年，王猛得了重病。苻坚去探望他。王猛恳切地对苻坚说：“东晋虽然远在江南，但是它继承晋朝正统，而且现在朝廷内部相安无事。我死之后，陛下千万不要去进攻晋国。我们的敌手是鲜卑人和羌人，留着他们总是后患。一定要把他们除掉，才能保障秦国的安全。”

was able to subdue powerful local interests and undertake political reform. At this time, a man names Qiang De (brother of the empress dowager and Grand Master of Splendid Happiness) often got into drunken brawls and was involved in the forcible taking of property and women from others. One of the first things Wang Meng did upon becoming Metropolitan Governor of the capital was to arrest Qiang De. Though Fu Jian was informed of the arrest straight away, by the time he had sent a messenger with an imperial pardon, Qiang De had already been executed. In the next couple of months, more than twenty members of rich and powerful families, as well as some in the royal clan, were either put to death, sentenced to prison terms or dismissed from office. The entire court was in shock and frightened would-be criminals were consequently dissuaded from action. "Now I understand how important it is to have the rule of law in the country," Fu Jian said with admiration.

Owing to Fu Jian and Wang Meng's reforms, the strength of the Former Qin grew steadily, enabling it to subdue the three minor kingdoms of the Former Yan, the Dai and the Former Liang, thus achieving the unification of the part of the country in the Yellow River basin.

In 375 AD, Wang Meng fell critically ill. When Fu Jian visited him, Wang Meng said to him, "Although the Eastern Jin is in Jiang'nan far in the south, it has inherited the legitimacy of the Jin dynasty and its imperial court enjoys relative peace. It is my earnest hope that you will not attack the Jin after my death. Our enemies are the Xianbei and the Qiang tribes. They would be an ever present threat if allowed to grow in strength. The security of the Qin can be ensured only with their elimination."

30、一意孤行的苻坚

苻坚在王猛生前对王猛是言听计从的，但是他却没有听王猛临死留下的忠告。

王猛认为前秦的敌手是鲜卑人和羌人，但是苻坚却十分信任从前燕来投奔他的鲜卑贵族慕容垂和羌族贵族姚萇（音cháng）。王猛劝他不要进攻东晋，但苻坚却把东晋当作唯一的敌人，非把它消灭不可。

王猛死后的第三年，苻坚就派他的儿子苻丕和慕容垂、姚萇等带了十几万大军，分兵几路进攻东晋的襄阳。守襄阳的晋将朱序坚决抵抗。秦兵花了将近一年时间，把襄阳攻了下来。

苻丕把朱序俘虏了，送到长安。苻坚认为朱序能够为晋国坚守襄阳，是个有气节的忠臣，把他收在秦国做个官员。

苻坚接着又派兵十几万从襄阳向东进攻淮南。东晋守将谢石、谢玄率领水陆两路进攻，把秦兵打得一败涂地。

但是，苻坚不肯就此罢休。到了公元382年，他认为准备成熟，就下决心大举进攻东晋。

30. Strong-willed Fu Jian

Though Fu Jian had closely followed Wang Meng's advice when he was alive, he paid no heed to his deathbed admonition.

While Wang Meng considered the Xianbei and the Qiang to be the enemies of the Former Qin, Fu Jian placed his trust in the Xianbei aristocrat Murong Chui and the Qiang aristocrat Yao Chang, who had come from to offer their services. Wang Meng advised him not to attack the Eastern Jin, but Fu Jian was bent on annihilating it in the belief that it was his sole enemy.

In the third year after Wang Meng's death, Fu Jian sent his son Fu Pi, Murong Chui and Yao Chang with a 100,000-strong force to attack Xianyang in the Eastern Jin. The Jin general Zhu Xu put up a valiant fight and hostilities lasted for almost a year before Xianyang finally fell to the Qin army.

Zhu Xu was captured by Fu Pi and sent to Chang'an. Fu Jian, impressed by Zhu Xu's integrity and loyalty to the Jin in his heroic defence of Xianyang, invited him to join his government.

Fu Jian then sent another 100,000-strong force east to attack Huainan. The generals of the Eastern Jin defending the city, Xie Shi and Xie Xuan, led a two-pronged operation on land and water against the Qin army, and subsequently dealt it a crushing defeat.

However, Fu Jian refused to give up. In 382 AD, he decided that it was time to launch a major campaign against the Eastern Jin.

这一年十月，苻坚在皇宫里的太极殿召集大臣商量。苻坚说：“我继承王位到现在已快三十年，各地的势力差不多都平定了。只有盘踞在东南的晋国，还不肯降服。现在，我们有九十七万精兵。我打算亲自带领去讨伐晋国，你们认为怎么样？”

大臣们纷纷表示反对。大臣权舆说：“晋国虽然弱小，但是他们的国主还没犯什么大错，手下还有像谢安、桓冲那样的文武大臣，团结一致。咱们要大举攻晋，恐怕不是时候。”

苻坚听了权舆的话，拉长了脸很不高兴。另一个武将石越说：“晋国有长江作为天然屏障，再加上百姓都想抵抗，只怕我们不能够取胜。”

苻坚更加生气，他大声说：“哼，长江天险有什么了不起，我们的军队那么多，大家把手里的马鞭子投到长江里，也可以把长江的水堵塞。他们还能拿什么来做屏障。”

大伙儿议论了半天，没有一个结果。苻坚不耐烦地说：“你们都走吧，还是让我自己来决断。”

大臣们看见苻坚发火，只好一个个退出宫殿。最后，只有他弟弟苻融还留在殿上。

In October of that year, Fu Jian summoned his court to Taiji Palace for a consultation. "I've been on the throne for nearly 30 years and have succeeded in pacifying most of the country. Now only the Jin in the southeast refuses to submit. We possess an elite fighting force of 970,000 men, which it is my intention to personally lead on a punitive raid against the Jin. What do you think?" Fu Jian asked.

Most of those gathered expressed strong disapproval of his plans. "Despite the weakness of his kingdom, the ruler of the Jin has committed no offense and has the loyal support of top civilian and military officials like Xie An and Huan Chong. This is not the time for a major military action against the Jin." The minister Quan Yu argued.

Fu Jian was displeased by Quan Yu's remarks. "The Jin have the natural barrier of the Yangtze in their favor. Besides, the people there are no doubt united in their determination to put up a stiff resistance. A victory would by no means be certain." A general commented.

Getting angrier, Fu Jian began to shout. "Huh! What's so formidable about the natural barrier of the Yangtze? We have a massive army. If our cavalymen threw their whips into the river, its flow would be interrupted. Where would be their barrier then?"

The meeting went on for a long while without coming to any conclusion. Finally Fu Jian became impatient and said, "You are all dismissed. I will make the decision without you."

Realizing that Fu Jian was in a foul mood, the ministers left the palace, and only the emperor's brother Fu Rong stayed behind.

苻坚把苻融拉在他的身边，说：“自古以来，决定国家大计的，总是靠一两个人。今天，大家议论纷纷，没有议出个结果来。这件事还是咱们两人来决定吧。”

苻融心情沉重地回答说：“我看攻打晋国确有许多困难。再说，我军连年打仗，兵士们也已经精疲力乏，不想再打。今天这些反对出兵的，都是陛下的忠臣。希望陛下采纳他们的意见。”

苻坚没料到苻融也会反对他，马上沉下脸来，说：“连你也会说出这种丧气的话来，真叫人失望。我有精兵百万，兵器、粮草堆积如山，要打下晋国这样残余敌人，哪有不胜的道理。”

苻融看见苻坚这样一意孤行，急得差不多要哭起来。他苦苦劝告苻坚说：“现在要打晋国，不但没有必胜的希望，而且京城里还有许许多多鲜卑人、羌人、羯人。陛下离开长安远征，要是他们起来叛乱，后悔也来不及了。陛下难道忘记王猛临终前讲的一番话吗！”

打那以后，还有不少大臣劝苻坚不要攻晋。苻坚一概不理睬。有一次，京兆尹慕容垂进宫求见。苻坚要慕容垂谈谈他的看法。慕容垂说：“强国吃掉弱国，大国并吞小国，这是

"Since antiquity it has always been one or two persons who have made the important decisions for the country. Today's discussion was fruitless. Let's make the decision between you and me." Fu Jian said to him.

"I am afraid that it's also my view that the planned action against the Jin is fraught with difficulties. Moreover, long years of military action has tired the troops out and dampened their will to keep fighting. Those who spoke out against military action did so out of their loyalty and devotion to you. I hope his Majesty can heed their advice in that spirit." Fu Rong replied with a heavy heart.

Fu Jian was surprised by Fu Rong's opposition. "I am disappointed that such defeatist talk should come from you of all people. With my mighty force, as well as my mountains of military hardware and supplies, there is no conceivable reason why I can't wipe out such a feeble foe as the Jin."

Fu Jian's stubborn persistence brought Fu Rong to the brink of tears. "Leaving aside the fact that a war against the Jin is not assured of victory, you must realize that in our capital there are many residents of other minorities such as the Xianbei, the Qiang and the Xie. If they exploit your absence to raise a rebellion while you are away on a long campaign, you would be in serious trouble. Has his Majesty forgotten Wang Meng's deathbed advice?" He said imploringly.

Yet Fu Jian ignored all subsequent objections to his planned attack on the Jin. When the Metropolitan Governor, Murong Chui, came to the palace asking for an audience with Fu Jian, he asked him to give his view on the matter. "It is a law of nature that the strong gobble up the weak and big powers devour

自然的道理。像陛下这样英明的君王，手下有雄师百万，瀚朝是良将谋士，要灭掉小小晋国，不在话下。陛下只要自己拿定主意就是，何必去征求许多人的意见呢。”

苻坚听了慕容垂的话，高兴得眉开眼笑，说：“看来，能和我一起平定天下的，只有你啦！”说着，马上吩咐左右拿五百匹绸缎赏给慕容垂。

经过慕容垂一怂恿，苻坚兴奋得连晚上都睡不着觉。他的妃子张夫人听到朝廷内外很多人不赞成出兵，也好言好语劝他。苻坚说：“打仗的事，你们女人家别管。”

苻坚最宠爱的小儿子苻铕，也劝苻坚说：“皇叔（指苻融）是最忠于陛下的，陛下为什么不听他的话？”

苻坚冷淡地说：“天下大事，孩子别乱插嘴。”

苻坚拒绝了大臣和亲人的劝说，决心孤注一掷，进攻东晋。

他派苻融、慕容垂充当先锋，又把姚萇封为龙骧将军，指挥益州、梁州的人马，准备出兵攻晋。

慕容垂的两个侄儿偷偷地跟慕容垂说：“皇上骄做得过分了。看来，这次战争，倒是我们恢复燕国的好机会呢！”

small ones. A strong and wise ruler like his Majesty, who has a million valiant fighters under his command and a court stuffed with able generals and excellent advisers could easily snuff out an insignificant power like the Jin. It's his Majesty's call—there's no need to consult others about it." Murong Chui said.

Fu Jian's face lit up at Murong Chui's words. "It appears that you are the only person prepared to help me achieve my dreams." He immediately ordered his attendants to reward Murong Chui with five hundred bolts of silks and satins.

At Murong Chui's incitement, Fu Jian has become too worked up to sleep that night. The imperial concubine Lady Zhang, aware of widespread opposition both inside and outside the government to the war, tried to dissuade him from the enterprise. "You womenfolk should stay out of war matters!" Fu Jian told her.

His favorite son Fu Xian also tried to talk Fu Jian out of it. "Uncle Fu Rong is most devoted to his Majesty. Why won't his Majesty heed his advice?"

"You are too young to have a say in affairs of state," Fu Jian replied dismissively.

Rebuffing all advice from officials and family members, Fu Jian decided to attack the Eastern Jin.

He sent Fu Rong and Murong Chui to lead a vanguard and appointed Yao Chang Longxiang General, ordering him to head the troops of Yizhou and Liangzhou in preparation for a march on the Jin.

Two of Murong Chui's nephews privately said to him, "The emperor is much too cocky. This war seems to be a perfect opportunity for us to restore the kingdom of Yan."

15,000 copies

Copyright © 2008 Shanghai Press and Publishing Development Company

All rights reserved. Unauthorized reproduction, in any manner, is prohibited.

This book is edited and designed by the Editorial Committee of *Cultural China* series

Managing Directors: Wang Youhu, Xu Naiqing

Editorial Director: Wu Yung

Editor (Chinese): Zhou Kexi

Editor (English): Sam Meekings

Chinese Text by Lin Handa, Cao Yuzhang

Translation by Yawtsong Lee

Interior and Cover Design: Yuan Yinchang, Xia Wei

ISBN: 978-1-60220-915-2

Address any comments about *Tales from Five Thousand Years of Chinese History (III)* to:

Better Link Press

99 Park Ave

New York, NY 10016

USA

or

Shanghai Press and Publishing Development Company

F 7 Donglu Road, Shanghai, China (200031)

Email: comments_betterlinkpress@hotmail.com

Computer typeset by Yuan Yinchang Design Studio, Shanghai

Printed in China by Shanghai Dornelley Printing Co. Ltd.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10